

# Te Marautanga o Aotearoa



# Te Marautanga o Aotearoa



# He Mihi

Tēnei te mihi a Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga ki ngā kaituhi i taea ai te tāpae atu i tēnei whakahoutanga o *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa*.

Me mihi anō ki te kairuruku ā-motu, rātou ko ngā kaumātua, ngā kaitiaki reo, ngā kaitiaki tikanga o te rōpū mahi nei i whakatūria e Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga ki te ārahi i te whakahoutanga o *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa*.

Me mihi hoki ki ngā whānau i tuku mai i ngā whakaahua, o Hapimana Toby Rikihana, o Anne Anituatua Delamere, o Hirini Melbourne, o Nan Gray, o Tuki Nepe. Nā te Alexander Turnbull Library, tohutoro 35mm-00094-D-F. te whakaahua o Tā Apirana Ngata. Me mihi ki ngā whānau o Tā Hēmi Henare, nā Bruce Connew te whakaahua, mana pupuri © Bruce Connew.

Me mihi ki ngā tamariki kei roto i ngā whakaahua, ki a Shayne Ayrton rātou ko Ariana Ayrton, ko Danelle Hēmi, ko Olliver Smith, ko Te Awa Johnstone, ko Whare Johnstone, ko Tautahi Johnstone, ko Whititerangi Kake-Issac, ko Anaru Waring, ko Naomi Ransfield.

Rōpū ētita: Te Pou Taki Kōrero  
Kaihoahoa: Phillip Paea, Chevon Paea, Liz Tui Morris

I whakaputaina tēnei tanga hou i te tau 2017  
e Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga  
PO Box 1666  
Wellington 6140  
Te Whanganui-a-Tara, Aotearoa  
[www.education.govt.nz](http://www.education.govt.nz)

Mana pupuri © Te Karauna 2008  
Pūmau te mana  
Ngā tono ki te kaiwhakaputa i te pukapuka

Te Ratonga Kiritaki a Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga  
Waea 0800 660 662  
Waea Whakaahua 0800 660 663  
Īmera: [orders@thechair.minedu.govt.nz](mailto:orders@thechair.minedu.govt.nz)  
Ipurangi [www.thechair.minedu.govt.nz](http://www.thechair.minedu.govt.nz)

## *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa*

ISBN 978 0 7903 4310 5 (pukapuka)  
ISBN 978 1 77669 232 3 (ā-ipurangi)  
Nama take: 34310

## *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa Posters*

Nama take: 11407

Ko ngā pikitia, ngā whakaahua me ngā hoahoa kei ngā whārangi e whai ake nei:

9, nā Adrian Heke ngā pikitia o ngā tamariki, mana pupuri © Te Karauna; 9, nā Image Science & Analysis Laboratory NASA Johnson Space Center ngā whakaahua o te mahere o te ao me te mahere o Aotearoa, mana pupuri © NASA; 40, 97, nā He Kupenga Hao i te Reo ngā hoahoa pāngarau, pūtaiao, mana pupuri © Te Karauna; 74, 75, nā Donn Ratana ngā pikitia, mana pupuri © Te Karauna; 86, 89–92, nā Donn Ratana ngā pikitia, mana pupuri © Donn Ratana; 110, nā Tuihana Pook te hoahoa, mana pupuri © Te Karauna; ko ngā pikitia katoa o ngā iwi whānui kei ētahi whārangi puta noa i *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa*, mana pupuri © Te Karauna 2008.

# Ngā Ihirangi

## Te Anga Marautanga

He Kupu Takamua	4
He Kupu Whakataki	5
Te Pūtake o Te Marautanga o Aotearoa	6
Ngā Wāhanga o Te Marautanga o Aotearoa	7
Te Āhua o ā Tātou Ākonga	8
Ngā Mātāpono Whānui	10
Ngā Uara, Ngā Waiaro	11
Te Reo Māori	12
He Toi Mātauranga, He Mana Tangata	13
Ngā Āhuatanga Ako	15
Te Hoahoa Marautanga ā-Kura	17
Ngā Tikanga hei Whai mā ngā Poari o ngā Kura	20
Ngā Tau Ako me ngā Taumata o te Marautanga	21

## Ngā Wāhanga Ako

Te Reo Māori	24
Pāngarau	40
Hauora	60
Tikanga ā-lwi	74
Ngā Toi	86
Pūtaiao	96
Hangarau	110
Te Reo Pākehā	120
Ngā Reo	152

## He Kupu Taka

Ngā Kupu Tukanga	158
Ngā Kupu i ngā Wāhanga Ako	159



# He Kupu Takamua

*E tipu e rea mō ngā rā o tōu ao.*

*Ko tō ringa ki ngā rākau a te Pākehā hei ara mō tō tinana.*

*Ko tō ngākau ki ngā taonga a ō tīpuna Māori hei tikitiki mō tō māhuna.*

*Ko tō wairua ki tō Atua, nāna nei ngā mea katoa.*

*(Tā Apirana Ngata)*

## Tēnā koutou katoa

Huri noa i te ao, kei mua *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa* e haere ana mō te wāhi ki tana tū hei marautanga nā te tangata whenua. He tino takahanga whakamua anō hoki mō te mātauranga i Aotearoa. E hara i te whakamāoritanga noa o te marautanga o Aotearoa kua takoto mā ngā kura auraki. He marautanga tangata whenua taketake ake, kua tāraitia, kua tuhia ki te reo Māori.

E taki ana tēnei marautanga hou i te ahunga mō te whakaako me te ako i ngā kura me ngā akomanga o Aotearoa ko te reo Māori te reo kawae i ngā mahi. Kei konei e tohua ana ngā mea kia mātua horahia e te pūnaha mātauranga o Aotearoa mā ngā ākonga i aua akomanga. He haere kōtui tonu, he tautoko tonu tā tēnei i *Ka Hikitia*, te rautaki a Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga hei whakapiki ake i ngā mea e tutuki ana i te rāngai mātauranga mā te iwi Māori.

He marautanga tāwariwari *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa*, he tūāpapa mō ngā kura, ngā poari kaitiaki, ngā kaiako, ngā whānau me ngā hāpori, e pai ai tā rātou whakatakoto i ngā whakaakoranga me ngā akoranga e hāngai ana, e tuawhiti ana, ka mutu, kei te reo Māori katoa.

E tika ana anō kia mātua takoto he tūāpapa ako pakari mā ngā ākonga katoa o Aotearoa, kia eke rātou ki ngā taumata, kia whai tonu rātou i te mātauranga ā kaumātua noa, ā, kia wātea anō ōna huarahi e whai wāhi ai rātou ki tētahi hunga kaimahi pūmanawa rau. E whakaū ana *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa* i te wāhi nui ki te mātauranga e taea ai ēnei mea e ngā ākonga e reo Māori ana ngā whakaakoranga. He tautoko tāna i te aranga ake o ngā ākonga e puta ana ngā ihu, e tū māia ana ki te whakaputa i ō rātou whakaaro, e mōhio pai ana ko wai rātou, ā, e whai ana i ngā pūkenga me ngā mātauranga e pakari ai tā rātou tū i te ao Māori me te ao whānui.

Pērā anō i *Ka Hikitia*, i *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa* ka noho te ākonga ki te pū o ngā mahi ako katoa. E tohu ana te tuhinga nei he mea nui kia mārama ngā kaiako he pēhea te ako a ngā ākonga, he aha anō ngā mea e tika ana kia ākona e rātou. He tautoko tāna i ngā kura, kia uru ai ngā ākonga katoa ki ngā mahi ako e ea ai ō rātou hiahia, ō rātou wawata.

He tino takahanga whakamua *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa*, heoi anō, he takahanga tuatahi noa. I mahi tahi Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga ki ngā kura me ngā hāpori ki te hanga i te marautanga, ā, ka āta tautoko anō i a rātou ki te whakatinana i te marautanga. Ka nui ngā mihi ki ngā tāngata katoa i whai wāhi mai ki te hanganga o *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa*, te marautanga tuatahi o Aotearoa nā te tangata whenua, mā te tangata whenua.



Karen Sewell  
Secretary for Education

# He Kupu Whakataki

Ko te tākū o Te Marautanga o Aotearoa i whakaūkia i runga i ngā wawata kia tū tangata te ākonga, kia tupu hei ākonga mātau, hei ākonga pakari, hei ākonga whakawhitiwhiti kōrero i roto i te ao Māori, e whai oranga ai tōna hinengaro, tōna tinana, tōna wairua, me tōna pūmau hoki ki tōna tuakiri, ki tōna tūrangawaewae. Kei a ia ngā pūkenga, ngā mōhiotanga hoki e whai wāhi atu ai ia ki te hāpai i te iwi Māori me te ao whānui.

E tautuhi ana *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa* me pēhea te tūhono atu i tēnei tirohanga ki te taiao ako o ngā tamariki kei roto i ngā kura e ako ana mā te huarahi o te reo Māori.

Me tīmata mai i ngā ākonga, i ō rātou mōhiotanga, i ō rātou pūkenga, i ō rātou uara, waiaro hoki, hei āpiti atu ki ngā wheako ako o te kura. E whakatau ana Te Marautanga o Aotearoa me whai wāhi ngā

tikanga Māori i roto i ngā āhuatanga ako. Ko te kāinga, te hapori, te ahurea, te hapū o te ākonga e whai wāhi ana i roto i te mātauranga o te kura. Kia angitu ai te puta o ngā ākonga, me pūmau te mahi tahi a te kura, te kāinga, te hapū, te iwi me te hapori.

Kei te tautoko Te Marautanga o Aotearoa i te tuakiri ahurea me ngā taonga tuku iho a ngā ākonga me ō rātou whānau.

Kei te tautoko hoki Te Marautanga o Aotearoa i ngā taiao ako o ngā kura tuatahi me ngā kura tuarua. Me wātea ngā ākonga katoa ki te whakawhanake mōhiotanga i roto i ngā wāhanga ako me ngā pūkenga. Mā tēnei momo ako, ka āhei rātou ki te kake ake ki te tihi o ō rātou ake pūmanawa, ā, ki te mahi i runga i te tōtika, i te whai hua anō i roto i te hapori Māori me te ao whānui.

# Te Pūtake o Te Marautanga o Aotearoa

E whakaatu ana *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa* i te mātauranga, i ngā pūkenga, i ngā uara, i ngā waiaro hei ārahi i te ako a ngā ākonga i roto i ngā kura reo Māori. Me mātua uru te marautanga ki roto i ngā tūtohunga kura katoa hei whakatutuki i ngā mātāpono, i ngā whāinga paetae o tēnā wāhanga ako, o tēnā wāhanga ako. Heoi anō, mā ngā kura anō te mātauranga me ngā horopaki o ō rātou ake rohe e whakauru ki ngā horopaki ako.

## Ko Te Marautanga o Aotearoa, he anga:

- hei whakawhanake kaupapa here ā-motu, hei tautoko i ngā ratonga mātauranga mō ngā kura reo Māori;
- hei tautohu i ngā mātāpono me ngā rautaki aromatawai;
- hei tautohu i ngā arotakenga ā-kura me ngā putanga ako o ngā ākonga;
- hei whakamōhio i ngā whare wānanga, ngā kura whakapakari kaiako hoki;
- hei āwhina i ngā mātua kia mārama ai rātou ki te marautanga ako o te kura;
- hei whakamana i ngā kaupapa ako o te kura.

# Ngā Wāhanga o Te Marautanga o Aotearoa

## Te Marautanga o Aotearoa

### Te Āhua o ā Tātou Ākongā

#### Ka eke ngā ākongā ki:

Ngā Tino Taumata Mātauranga, me ngā Tikanga Māori;  
Te Whānuitanga o ngā Tūmomo Pūkenga Waiora;  
Te Whānuitanga o ngā Kōwhiringa Tūranga Mahi.

#### Ngā Uara, Ngā Waiaro

Kia Whanake ngā  
Uara  
me ngā Waiaro o te  
Ākongā ake

Ngā Uara o  
te Ao Māori

Ngā Uara o  
te Ao Whānui

#### Te Reo Māori

Kia Eke  
te Ākongā  
ki tōna Taumata o  
te Reo Māori

Kia Eke  
ki ngā Taumata  
Mātauranga mā te  
Huarahi o  
te Reo Māori

Kia Eke  
te Ākongā  
ki tōna Taumata o  
ngā Reo

#### He Toi Mātauranga, He Mana Tangata

Te Ao  
o te  
Ākongā

Te Ao Tawhito,  
te Ao o  
Nāianeī,  
te Ao Hou

Te Ao  
Whānui

#### Ngā Wāhanga Ako

Te Reo Māori

Pāngarau

Hauora

Tikanga ā-lwi

Ngā Toi

Pūtaiao

Hangarau

Te Reo Pākehā

Ngā Reo

#### Ngā Whāinga Paetae

#### Te Pūtake o Te Marautanga o Aotearoa

**Ngā Āhuatanga Ako**  
Te Whanake o te Taiao  
Kaupapa Māori

Te Taiao Ako Whānui  
Te Āta Whakaaroaro, te  
Whakakoi Hinengaro

Te Whanake o ngā Momo  
Huarahi Ako

Te Whanake o te Ako-E

Te Whakarite  
Aromatawai Whai Take

Ngā Tikanga Aromatawai  
o te Kura Whānui

#### Te Whakahoahoa Marautanga ā-Kura

#### Ngā Mātāpono Whānui

Ko te Ākongā te Pūtake o te Ako

Kia Pūmau te Ākongā ki a ia Anō

Kia Eke te Ākongā ki tōna Taumata

Me Mahi Tahi te Kura, te Whānau, te Hapū, te Iwi, me te Hapori

Ko te Oranga Taiao, he Oranga Tangata

#### Te Marautanga o te Kura

# Te Āhua o ā Tātou Ākonga

He whakarāpopotonga tēnei o ngā āhuatanga tino whai tikanga o te ākonga ka puta i ngā kura reo Māori.

Nā te mahi tahi a te kura me tōna hapori, whānau, hapū, iwi, ka eke ngā ākonga ki:

## Ngā Tino Taumata Mātauranga, me ngā Tikanga Māori

- Ka tae rātou ki ō rātou taumata pūmanawa.
- Ka angitu te puta i te mātauranga.
- Ka māia te noho me te tū whakahī i te tū a te Māori.
- Ka kaha ki te tautoko i te whānau, i te hapū, i te iwi, i te hapori.
- Ka whai wāhi atu ki te ao Māori, ā, kei te hāpai i tā te Māori titiro ki te ao whānui.
- Ka māia hoki rātou ki te tū a te Māori, ki te whakawhanaunga atu ki ētahi atu iwi, ki ētahi atu ahurea hoki.
- Ka mārāma ki ō rātou tūranga i roto i te whānau, i te hapū, i te iwi, i te hapori, me te porihanga whānui tonu.

## Te Whānuitanga o ngā Tūmomo Pūkenga Waiora

- Kua māia ki te whai i ō rātou ake ara whai oranga.
- Ka tuku āwhina me te kuhu tōtika atu ki te hapori.
- Ka whakanui i ētahi atu, tae atu ki ngā tamariki, ki ō rātou ake tipuranga, me ngā kaumātua.
- Ka noho angitu, ka rongu anō i te oranga ngākau.
- He maha tonu ngā pūkenga hei āwhina i a ia.
- Ka whiwhi ia i ngā pūkenga e uru atu ai ia ki ngā whare wānanga e hiahiatia ana.

## Te Whānuitanga o ngā Kōwhiringa Tūranga Mahi

- Ka whiwhi ia i ngā pūkenga me ngā mātauranga e uru atu ai ia ki te mahi e hiahiatia ana.
- Ka kaha ia ki te whai i tōna ake huarahi e whai take ana.
- Ka nui ōna kōwhiringa tūranga mahi.



# Ngā Mātāpono Whānui

Ko te tāhū o *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa*, ko te Tiriti o Waitangi. E ahu mai ana i te Tiriti ko ngā mātāpono whānui e whai ake nei, hei arataki i te marautanga o ngā kura. He mea hanga ngā mātāpono i runga i te whakapono ko te ākongā te pūtake o ngā mahi ako katoa. Ko ngā mātāpono e whakaata mai ana, e whakatau ana i te tuakiri o ngā ākongā, o ngā kura reo Māori. Mā ngā mātāpono anō e arataki ngā mahi ako ki ngā kura. Me mātua whakauru ēnei mātāpono ki ngā mahi ako. Mā konei e eke ai te ākongā, te kura, me te whānau ki ngā taumata o te mātauranga.

## Ko te Ākongā te Pūtake o te Ako

Mā te marautanga ā-kura:

- e whakamana te ākongā;
- e hāpai te oranga ā-tinana, ā-wairua, ā-hinengaro, ā-whatumanawa o te ākongā;
- e whakaatu wheako kia eke ai te ākongā ki ōna taumata o ngā whāinga ako i tēnā, i tēnā wāhanga ako;
- e whakatītina kia whanake atu te mōhio, ngā pūkenga, me ngā waiaro e kaha ai te ākongā.

## Kia Pūmau te Ākongā ki a ia Anō

Ka whakaritea e te marautanga ā-kura ngā hōtaka ako, kia ū, kia puāwai te reo Māori me ngā tikanga Māori.

Ko te tino whāinga, kia tū tangata te ākongā i te ao Māori. Tuarua, mā te marautanga ā-kura e whakarite wheako e whai wāhi ai te ākongā ki te porihanga whānui. Nō reira, ko tā te marautanga ā-kura:

- he whakamana i te whānau me te iwi;
- he whakarite wheako e hono ana i ngā tikanga tuku iho a ngā iwi me ngā hāpori o ngā ākongā;
- he āwhina i te ākongā kia tū tangata i te ao Māori me te ao whānui;
- he whakatutuki i ngā whakaritenga, i ngā hiahia me ngā wawata o ō rātou hāpori;
- he whakarite wheako me te mātauranga e taea ai e te ākongā te uru ki te ao whānui i runga i te mātau.

## Kia Eke te Ākongā ki tōna Taumata

Ka tautohu, ka whakaū, ka whakamana hoki Te Marautanga o Aotearoa i te whāinga a te ākongā i ngā tūmomo whakaakoranga papai katoa.

Nō reira, me whakarite wheako:

- kia whai wāhi mai ai te ākongā;
- kia whanake ngā pūkenga, ngā waiaro me ngā uara e hiahia ana;
- kia whai wāhi ai te ākongā ki te whakatutuki putanga ako e rite ana ki ōna āheinga;
- kia tāwariwari tonu, kia taea ai te urupare ki ngā hiahia ako me ngā huarahi ako o tēnā ākongā, o tēnā ākongā.

## Me Mahi Tahī te Kura, te Whānau, te Hapū, te Iwi, me te Hāpori

Whakatenatena ai te marautanga kia whakaritea he whanaungatanga i waenga i te kura me te whānau e arotahi ana ki ngā akoranga o te ākongā. Nō reira, ko tā te marautanga ā-kura:

- he whakangāwari i te huarahi kia whai wāhi atu te whānau ki ngā kaupapa whakaako katoa a te kura;
- he whakauru mai i ngā horopaki o waho i te kura e whaitake ana ki te whānau me te hāpori;
- he poipoi i te reo me ngā tikanga o te whānau, te hapū, me te iwi.

## Ko te Oranga Taiao, he Oranga Tangata

Ka whakamana te marautanga i te urunga atu a te kura, te whānau, te hāpori, te hapū, me te iwi e arotahi ana ki te tū a te tamaiti, ki roto i tōna ake ao. Nō reira, ka pūmau te marautanga ā-kura:

- kia toitū te taiao;
- ki te whakawhanake i ngā huarahi ako e whaitake ai te tū a te tamaiti ki te taiao;
- ki te whakarite kaupapa hei honohono i ngā wāhanga ako;
- ki te whakamana i te mahi a te tipuranga ki tōna ake ao.

# Ngā Uara, Ngā Waiaro

*Kia māhaki māriri tōna mauri  
Kia noho māriri tōna mana motuhake  
Kia ngākau māhaki ki ōna hoa  
tae atu hoki ki ngā iwi whānui*

I te taha o te mātauranga me ngā pūkenga, he tino wāhi anō tō ngā uara me ngā waiaro i roto i *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa*. Ko ngā uara, ko ngā whakapono, me ngā mātāpono e pā ana ki te whanonga, kua pūmau i roto i te whatumanawa tangata, i te rōpū rānei. Ko ngā uara me ngā waiaro, ka ākona e te ākongā i roto i ngā wheako o tōna taiao whānui. Mā te marautanga ā-kura e whakaata ngā uara o te whānau, o te kura.

Ko tēnei wāhanga he whakarāpopoto i ētahi o ngā uara me ngā waiaro e tika ana kia mau i te ākongā e ako ana mā te huarahi o te reo Māori. Kei te tino tautoko ngā mātāpono o *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa* i te mahi tahi a te kura, te whānau, te hapū, te iwi, me te hāpori ki te whakarite i ngā uara me ngā waiaro.

## **Kia Whanake ngā Uara me ngā Waiaro o te Ākongā Ake**

- Kia tū pakari te ākongā i runga i te ngākau pono, te ngākau māhaki, me te rangimārie.
- Kia pai ai te tuakiri whaiaro o te ākongā, kia kake ake ai tana mauritau me tana rata ki a ia anō.
- Kia aroha atu te ākongā ki tēnā, ki tēnā.
- Kia hiahia te ākongā ki te uru ki te katoa o ngā mahi akoako o te kura, ahakoa whakaputa whakaaro, pānui, whakarongo rānei.

- Kia mau ki tōna whatumanawa ngā hōhonutanga o te whai i te mātauranga.
- Kia mau, kia noho whakaaraara, kia noho koi te hinengaro o te ākongā ki ngā mātauranga katoa hei ārahi i a ia i roto i te ao hou.
- Kia tautohu te ākongā, kia mārāma anō ia ki ōna ake uara me ōna ake whakapono.

## **Kia Mōhio ki ngā Uara o te Ao Māori**

- Kia mātau te ākongā ki ngā uara o tōna whānau, o tōna hapū, o tōna iwi, me te hāpori, e mārāma ai tōna huarahi ki te ao Māori.
- Kia manaaki ai, kia tiaki ai ia i te manuhiri.
- Kia mōhio ai ia ki tōna ake tuakiri, ki tōna tūrangawaewae.
- Kia mōhio ai ia ki tōna whakapapa, ki ngā hononga, ki ngā waka, me ngā iwi.
- Kia mahi tahi ai ia ki ōna hoa, ki ngā rōpū.

## **Kia Mārāma ki ngā Uara o te Ao Whānui**

- Kia aro ngā ākongā ki te tangata ahakoa ko wai, ahakoa kei hea, ahakoa pēhea rānei tōna āhua.
- Kia ngākau māhaki te ākongā ki te mana, ki te wairua o ia tangata, o ia whānau, me ō rātou ake uara, waiaro hoki, ahakoa he rerekē i ōna ake.

*Ko te reo te manawapou o te Māori  
Mā te kōrero  
te reo e ora ai  
Mā te ora o te reo  
ka rangatira te tangata*

Ko te reo te waka kawē i te wairua me te whakaaro Māori, e whakatinanatia ai ngā āhuatanga katoa o te ao Māori. He taonga tuku iho te reo Māori, he taonga e tautokohia ana e te Tiriti o Waitangi. Ko te reo te iho o te ahurea. He reo, he mana, he wairua, he whakapono, he tikanga tō tēnā tangata, tō tēnā iwi, tō tēnā rohe. Mā te reo Māori rawa e whakahua, e kawē, e whakamārama te huhua noa o ngā tikanga Māori. Mā te mātau o te ākongā ki te reo Māori, ka mārama tōna huarahi ki te ao Māori, me tana mahi hoki i roto i te ao Māori. Ko te rumaki te tino huarahi e matatau ai te ākongā ki te reo Māori. Ko te reo Māori hoki te reo hei kawē i ngā wāhanga ako katoa. Ahakoa te ōrite o ngā kupu me te reo o tēnei marautanga, kia kaha tonu ki te manaaki i ngā reo ā-iwi.

Kei konei e takoto ana ētahi tūmanako mō te reo e mātau ai te ākongā ki te reo Māori me te ao Māori.



## **Kia Eke te Ākongā ki tōna Taumata o te Reo Māori**

- Ka āhei ia ki te whakamahia i tōna reo i roto i ngā wāhi maha, ki ngā tikanga maha, ki ngā take maha, ki ngā hunga whakarongo maha.
- Ka taea te whakahāngai i āna kōrero ki te horopaki me te hunga e whai taringa atu ana ki aua kōrero.
- He ngāwari ki a ia te whakawhiti kōrero, ahakoa ki a wai, ahakoa nō tēhea iwi te reo.
- Ka tika te whanake o ngā pūkenga whakarongo, ka ngāwari ake te kōrero, te tuhituhi, te pānui, te whakaatu me te mātakitaki.

## **Kia Eke ki ngā Taumata Mātauranga mā te Huarahi o te Reo Māori**

- Ka whakamahia te reo ki ngā horopaki maha.
- Ka ngāwari, ka māia, ka pakari te kawē i a ia mā te huarahi o te reo Māori.
- Kei a ia te reo mātauranga o tēnā wāhanga ako, o tēnā wāhanga ako, e mārama ai ia ki te hōhonutanga o te kaupapa.

## **Kia Eke te Ākongā ki tōna Taumata o ngā Reo**

- Ka pakari te reo Māori, ka pakari te reo Pākehā, ka pakari te reo tuatoru e hiahiatia e te whānau.

# He Toi Mātauranga, He Mana Tangata

## *Mā te whakaaro nui e hanga te whare Mā te mātauranga e whakaū*

Kia maumahara, i te taenga mai o te ākongā ki te kura kei a ia anō ōna ake mātauranga i takea mai i te whānau. Me whai mana anō ngā tikanga me ngā mātauranga Māori o tēnei wā, o neherā hoki.

Kei te noho te mātauranga ki roto i ngā whakapono, ngā uara, me ngā tikanga ahurea. Kei ia tikanga tōna ake mana, ōna ake hononga. Me whakaae ngā kura kia uru mai te mātauranga o ngā whānau, ngā hapū, ngā iwi, me ngā hapori o ngā ākongā.

E whai ake nei ētahi o ngā tino āhuetanga e pā ana ki te kōwhiringa o ngā mātauranga me ngā pūkenga e hāngai ana ki te ākongā. Kei te tino tautoko ngā mātāpono o *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa* i te mahi tahi a te kura, te whānau, te hapū, te iwi, me te hapori ki te whakarite mātauranga e whai take ana.

### **Te Ao o te Ākongā**

- Ka tīmata mai i ngā mōhioanga ake o te ākongā ki ngā ako mātauranga hou.
- Ka ngāwari ake te ako mātauranga hou mehemea kua honoa ki ngā mātauranga kua mau kē i te ākongā.
- Ka whakamanaia te ākongā, te whānau, te hapū, te iwi hoki kia tau ai te mātauranga ā-ākongā, ā-iwi, ā-rohe.

- Kia kaha ngā kura ki te pōhiri atu i ngā pūkenga mātauranga o ō rātou whānau, iwi, hapū kia tū ai rātou ki te aroaro o ngā ākongā.
- Kia whānui tonu ngā wāhi ako o ngā ākongā.
- Kia whaitake te mātauranga ki te ākongā, ki te kura, ki te iwi.
- Kia eke te ākongā ki ōna taumata mātauranga o tōna ao.

### **Te Ao Tawhito, te Ao o Nāianei, te Ao Hou**

- Ka whaitake tonu te mātauranga o te ao tawhito, koia hei pūtake e puta ai te mātauranga hou.
- Kia mōhio mai ngā ākongā kei te rerekē haere ngā pūnaha mātauranga.
- Kia mārama ngā ākongā ka uia tonutia, ka tautohea tonutia te mātauranga.
- Kia taea hoki e ngā ākongā me ngā whānau te waihanga mātauranga hou.

### **Te Ao Whānui**

- Kia mārama te ākongā i ahu mai te mātauranga i ngā pūnaha o tēnā iwi, o tēnā whenua.
- Kia mārama anō ia i ahu mai te mātauranga i ngā korero ā-waha, ā-tuhi, ā-ipurangi hoki.
- Kia eke te ākongā ki tōna taumata mātauranga o te ao whānui.

# Ngā Āhuatanga Ako

Ko te ākongā te pūtāke o te ako, ā, ko *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa* tētahi o ngā āhuatanga e whakaawe ana i te ako a te tamaiti. Whakaawe ana i te ako a te ākongā e ōna wheako, e ōna uara me ōna whakapono hoki. He nui ngā āhuatanga i tua atu i ēnei e whakaawe ana i te ako a te ākongā, arā, ko te taiao o te akomanga, ko ngā hiahia me ngā whakapono o ngā kaiako, ko ngā hoa, ko te whānau, me te hapori. Ko te tukanga o te ako me te whakaako te tino arotahi i roto i te akomanga. Ko ngā ākongā me ngā kaiako e whakatau ana i te whanaungatanga e whanake ai te motuhaketanga o tēnā ākongā, o tēnā ākongā.

## **Te Whanake o te Taiao Kaupapa Māori, Taiao Ako Whānui**

- Me whakawhānui ngā wāhi ako ki ngā marae, ki ngā taiao rerekē o te rohe, o te rohe whānui.
- Me whakamahi ngā āhuatanga e tika ana hei whakatau i te wairua, hei whakawātea i te whatumanawa me te hinengaro, hei whakatatū i te ngākau kia pai ai te mahi a te ākongā i ngā mahi kua whakaritea.
- Me tautoko ngā āhuatanga ako i te tūtohinga o te kura, arā Te Aho Matua, ngā tūtohinga kura ā-iwi.
- Ko ngā āhuatanga ako katoa me mahi i roto i te koanga ngākau me te whakaihiihi i te hinengaro.
- Kia ako tahi ngā ākongā, ngā whānau, ngā kura hei tautoko i te āhua o te ākongā ka puta.
- Kia mārama te kaiako me te kura he nui ngā whakaawenga o te taiao ako whānui ki te akomanga.

## **Te Whanake o te Āta Whakaaroaro, te Whakakoi Hinengaro**

- Kia mau ki te whatumanawa o te ākongā ngā hōhonutanga o te ako i te mātauranga.
- Kia mau, kia āta whakaaroaro, kia noho koi te hinengaro o te ākongā.
- Kia whanake ngā pūkenga tātai, ngā pūkenga whakaoti rapanga, ngā pūkenga tinana, ngā pūkenga rapu mōhiohio, ngā pūkenga mahi katoa.
- Kia tautokongia te ākongā kia kore ai ia e whakawhirinaki ki te kaiako, ki ōna hoa i ngā wā katoa, ā, kia kaha ia ki te mahi i tāna ake mahi i te wā e tika ana.



## Te Whanake o ngā Momo Huarahi Ako

- He rerekē, he ahurei hoki ngā huarahi ako o tēnā ākonga, o tēnā ākonga. Tērā pea, he pai tētahi whakaritenga mahi ki tētahi ākonga, he pai tētahi whakaritenga kē ki tētahi atu.
- Whakaawetia ai ngā huarahi ako o te ākonga e ngā tūāhua maha, pēnā i te āhua o te whakarite mahi, te whakahaere mahi, ngā whakaritenga whakaaro, ngā kaupapa ako, ngā āhuetanga o te taiao, ngā tirohanga, me te hihiri ki te ako.
- Ka pai ake te ako a ngā ākonga mehemea e mārama ana rātou ki tā rātou e ako ana, e whai take ana hoki ki a rātou.
- He pai ake kia honohonoa ngā akoranga hou ki ngā akoranga kua mahia kētia.

## Te Whanake o te Ako-E

Ko te ako-e ko ngā akoranga ka whakatenatenatia, ka tautokona rānei mā ngā hangarau mōhiotia me ngā hangarau whakawhitiwhiti. He tino tikanga tā te hangarau mōhiotia mō tēnei tipuranga, nā reira he pai tēnei momo ako ki a rātou. Mā te ako-e:

- Ka māmā te kimi mātauranga i Aotearoa, i te ao whānui, me te noho tonu i te kura, i te kāinga rānei.
- Ka ako tahi ngā ākonga, ngā hapori.
- Ka uru atu te ākonga ki ngā wheako rerekē, ki ngā wheako kei tua atu i te kura, i te kāinga hoki.

## Te Whakarite Aromatawai Whai Take

He tino take tō te aromatawai i roto i *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa*. He tata rawa atu te hono i waenganui i te painga o te ako me te aromatawai. Ko te tino take o te aromatawai, he whakapiki i te ako a ngā ākonga, me te kounga o ngā hōtaka ako. He take anō mō te aromatawai, arā ko te whakahoki kōrero ki ngā mātua me ngā ākonga e mōhiotia ai e pēhea ana te haere o te ako. Ko tētahi anō, ko ngā tohu mātauranga o te kura tuarua. E whai ake nei ētahi mātāpono.

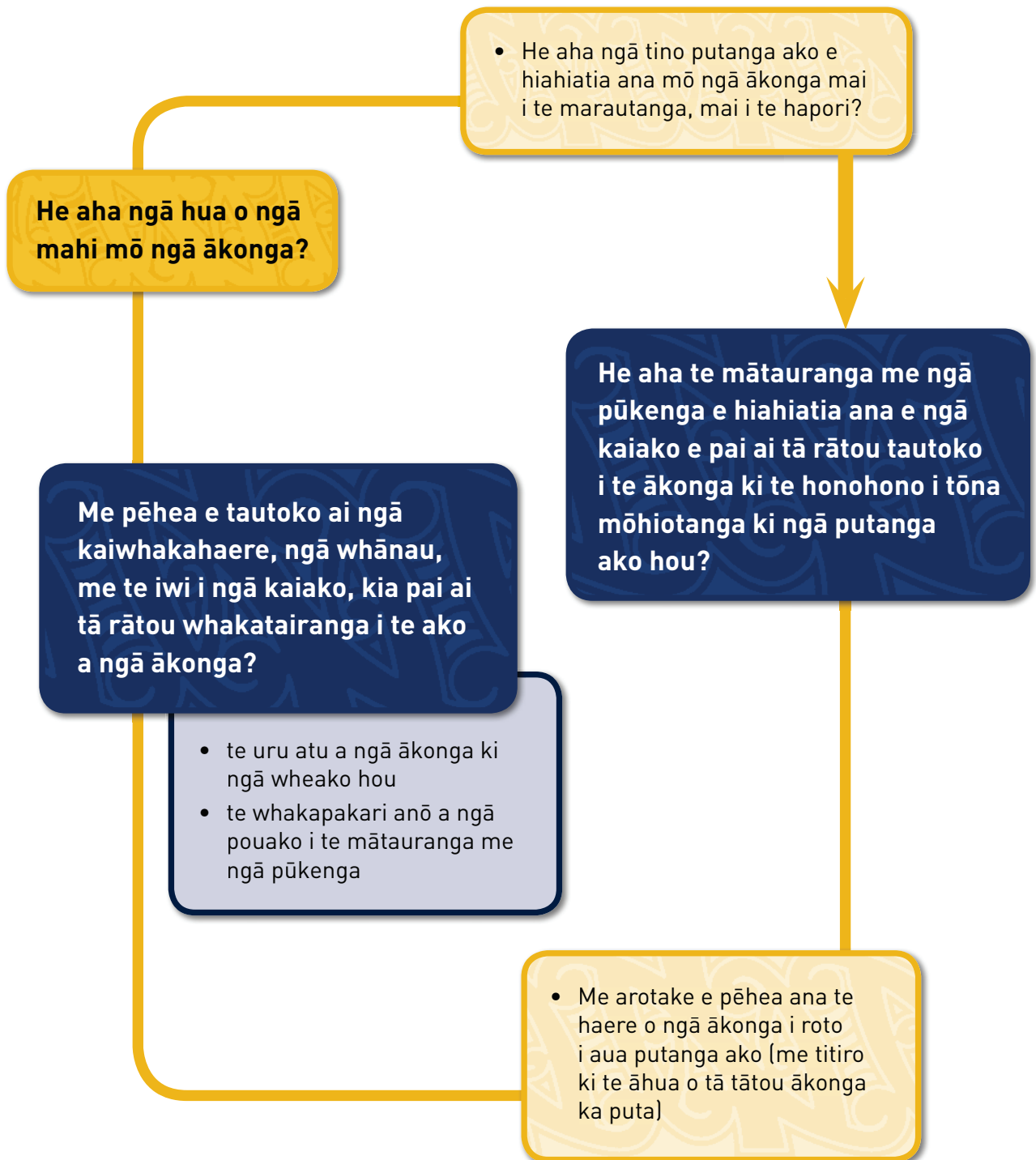
- Kia whaitake ki te ākonga, kia tika, kia pono. Kia mārama ngā ākonga ki tā rātou e ako ana.
- Ka uru ngā ākonga ki ngā tauanga aromatawai. Ka whakawhiti, ka matapaki i ō rātou whāinga, rautaki, tō rātou ahu whakamua ki ō rātou pouako, ki ō rātou mātua, ki a rātou anō.
- He tautoko tā te aromatawai i te piki whakarunga o te ako.
- Ka whakamahia te aromatawai i roto i te ngākau pai, kua hei whakamataku.
- He tino take tō tēnā aromatawai, tō tēnā aromatawai, nō reira, me hāngai te aromatawai ki te tino pūtake o te mahi.

## Ngā Tikanga Aromatawai o te Kura Whānui

E tika ana kia mōhio ngā kura he aha ngā hua o te ako ki ngā ākonga. Nō reira, i ētahi wā me kohikohi, me tātari ngā raraunga o te kura whānui tonu. Mahi ai ngā kura i tēnei hei whakarerekē i ngā kaupapa here, ngā hōtaka, ngā mahi whakaako, kia pai ake ai ngā putanga ako o ngā ākonga.



## Te Hurihanga Whakaako Pakirehua me te Waihanga Mātauranga



# Te Hoahoa Marautanga ā-Kura

Ahako ko *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa* te ara ako ā-motu mō ngā ākongā katoa, mā ia kura e hoahoa, e whakatinana tāna ake marautanga e hāngai ana ki ngā ākongā me ngā whānau o te kura.

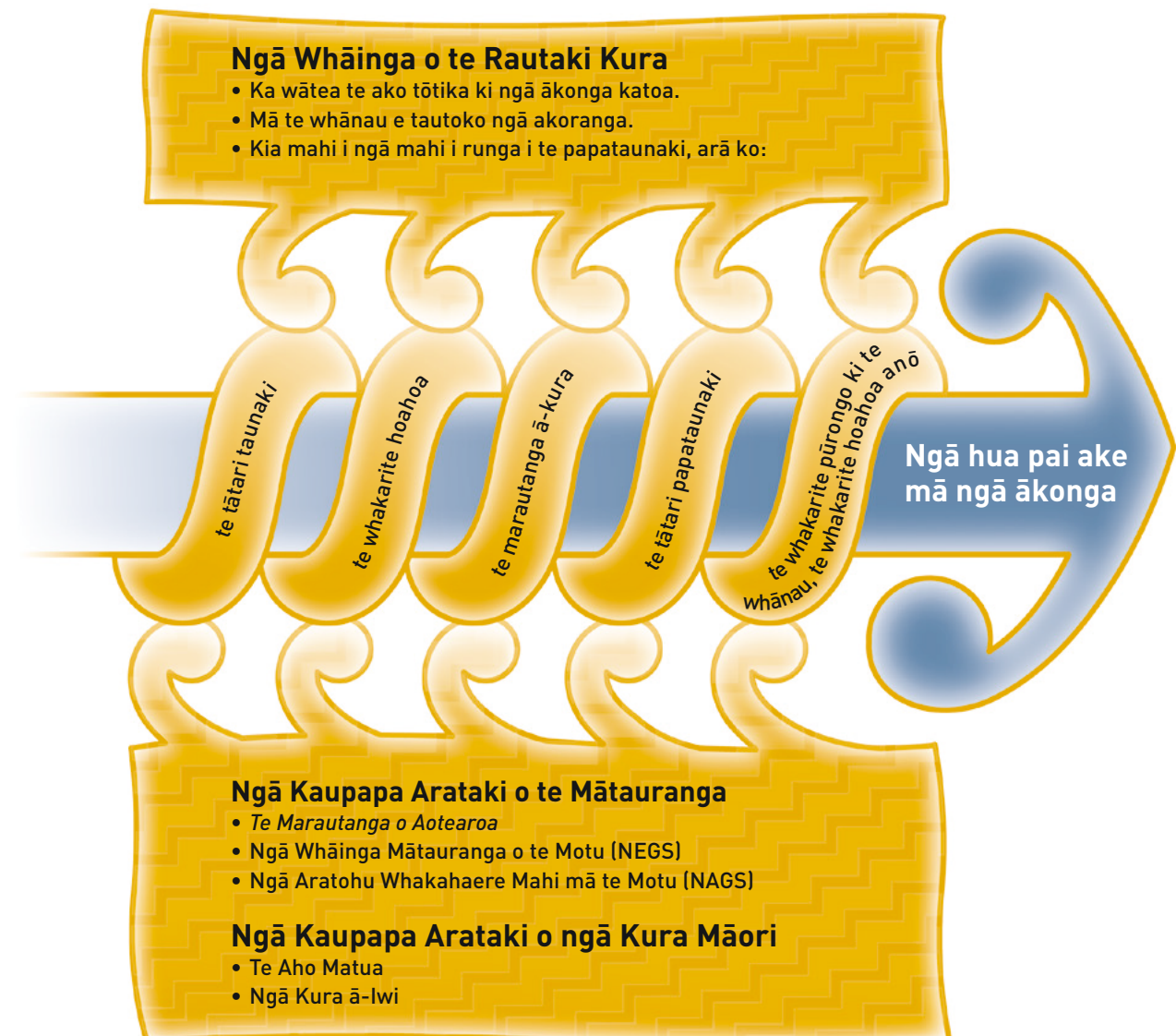
Me mahi tahi te poari whakahaere o te kura, te whānau me ngā kaiako ki te whakatakoto marautanga mō te kura.

Tērā pea, ka tīmata mai te hoahoa marautanga ā-kura i:

- Te Āhua o ā Tātou Ākongā (wh. 8).
- Ngā Mātāpono Whānui (wh. 10)
  - ngā mātāpono o te kura, ngā mātāpono o Te Aho Matua, o te iwi
  - ngā whāinga paetae kei roto i ngā wāhanga ako o *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa*.
- Ngā Uara, Ngā Waiaro (wh. 11).

- Te Reo Māori (wh. 12).
- He Toi Mātauranga, He Mana Tangata (wh. 13).
- Ngā Āhuetanga Ako (wh. 15).
- Te Hurihanga Whakaako Pakirehua me te Waihanga Mātauranga (wh. 16).

Kei te ārahi *Te Marautanga o Aotearoa* i ngā tikanga whakaako o ngā kura reo Māori o Aotearoa. Heoi anō, he anga noa te marautanga nei, ehara i te mahere, i te hōtaka rānei. Nō reira, mā te kura anō e āta whakarite tāna ake marautanga ā-kura. Mā tēnā kura, mā tēnā kura e kōwhiri me tīmata mai i hea. Ko ngā kura e whai ana i Te Aho Matua, koinā te tūāpapa mō te whakarite marautanga mā rātou. Ko ngā kura ā-iwi, ka whai i ā rātou ake tūtohinga. He rerekē hoki te whakarite a ia kura i āna hōtaka. Tērā pea, ka whakaritea ā-marau, ā-kaupapa, ā-horopaki rānei te hōtaka.



# Te Ture Mātauranga me Te Marautanga

## Ngā Hononga o te Ture Mātauranga ki te Marautanga ā-Motu, ā-Kura Hoki

### Te Ture Mātauranga 1989 Ngā Whāinga e Ārahi ana i te Mātauranga o te Motu

Ngā Whāinga  
Mātauranga o te  
Motu (NEGS)

Ngā Kaupapa  
Arataki i ngā  
Kura Reo Māori

- Te Aho Matua
- Ngā whāinga a ngā kura ā-iwi

Ngā Kīanga  
Marautanga  
o te Motu

Ngā Aratohu  
Whakahaere Mahi  
mā te Motu (NAGS)

### Te Marautanga o Aotearoa

Ngā Mātāpono

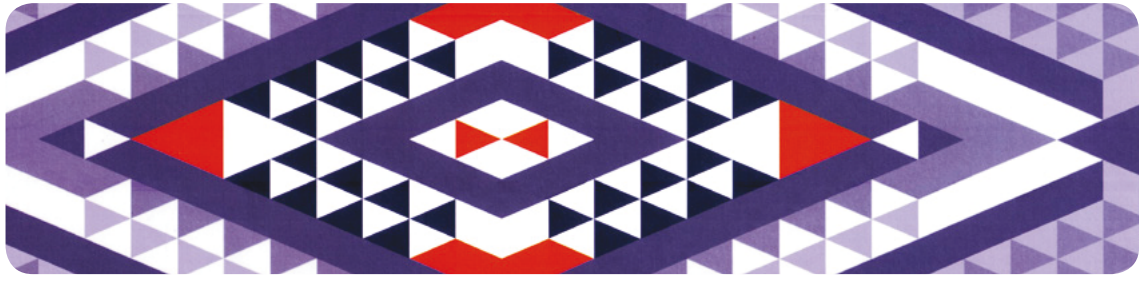
- Te Āhua o ā Tātou Ākongā
- Ngā Uara, Ngā Waiaro

Ngā Wāhanga Ako

Ngā Whāinga  
Paetae

# Ngā Wāhanga Ako

## TE REO MĀORI



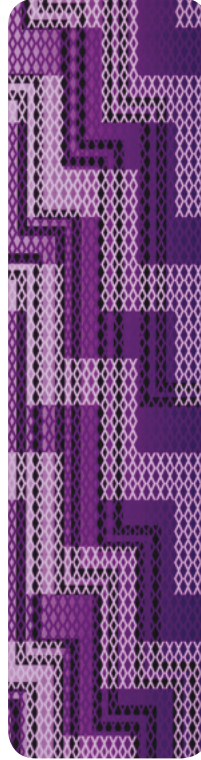
PĀNGARAU



HAUORA



TIKANGA Ā-IWI



NGĀ TOI



PŪTAIAO



HANGARAU



TE REO PĀKEHĀ



NGĀ REO



# Ngā Tikanga hei Whai mā ngā Poari o ngā Kura

Me whai te poari o te kura (me te āwhina mai anō a te tumuaki me ngā kaiako) kia whakawhanakehia, kia whakatinanatia hoki tētahi marautanga mā ngā ākonga i roto i ngā tau 1–13, ā:

- me hāngai anō ki ngā kōrero a te hapori, a te whānau, a te hapū, a te iwi mō ngā āhuatanga o te ākonga ina puta ia i te kura;
- me ū ki ngā mātāpono kua whakaatuhia ki te whārangi 10;
- me āwhina ngā ākonga ki te tautoko, ki te whakatauiria, ki te torotoro i ngā uara me ngā waiaro kua tautuhia e te hapori, e te whānau, e te hapū, e te iwi hoki;
- me tautoko ngā ākonga kia eke ai rātou ki ngā taumata o te reoruatanga.

Me whai te poari o te kura (me te āwhina mai anō a te tumuaki me ngā kaiako) kia whakaratongia ngā hōtaka ako whai hua tonu ki ngā ākonga katoa i ngā tau 1–10:

ko Te Reo Māori, kua tohua i te whārangi 24 haere ake;  
ko te Pāngarau, kua tohua i te whārangi 40 haere ake;  
ko te Hauora, kua tohua i te whārangi 60 haere ake;  
ko te Tikanga ā-lwi, kua tohua i te whārangi 74 haere ake;  
ko Ngā Toi, kua tohua i te whārangi 86 haere ake;  
ko te Pūtaiao, kua tohua i te whārangi 96 haere ake;  
ko te Hangarau, kua tohua i te whārangi 110 haere ake;  
ko Te Reo Pākehā, kua tohua i te whārangi 120 haere ake;  
ko Ngā Reo, kua tohua i te whārangi 152 haere ake.

Ko tā te wāhanga ako o Ngā Reo he whakatakoto anga mō te ako me te whakaako i ngā reo, atu i te reo Māori me te reo Pākehā. Ko ngā kura ka whakaakona ngā reo atu i te reo Māori me te reo Pākehā, ka aro atu ki ngā tohutohu marautanga kei tēnei wāhanga ako.

Ina hanga, ina arotake te kura i te marautanga, me tīpako ngā whāinga paetae mai i tēnā, i tēnā o ngā wāhanga ako hei tautoko i ngā hiahia ako o ā rātou ākonga.

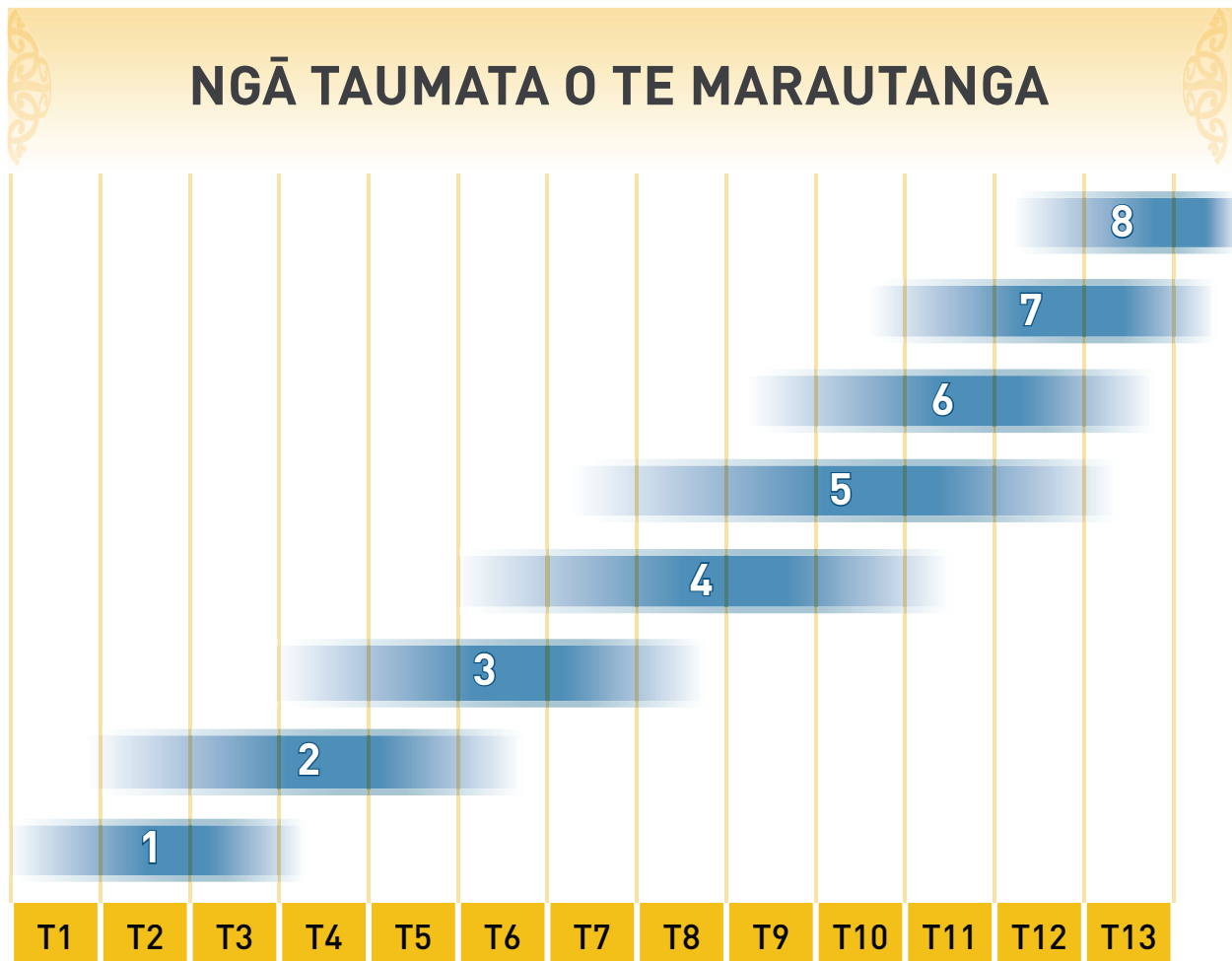
Me whai te poari o te kura (me te āwhina mai anō a te tumuaki me ngā kaiako):

- ki te kōhi pārongo e tika ai, e pai ai, e whai hua ai te arotake i te ako a te ākonga;
- ki te tohu i ngā ākonga me ngā kāhui ākonga kāore e eke ana ki ngā taumata e tika ana, ka kore pea rānei e puta ki ngā taumata, ngā ākonga hoki he taumaha ki a rātou ngā mahi ako, ā, ki te tautuhi i ngā āhuatanga o te marau hei āta titiro mā te kura;
- ki te mahi tahi me te hapori ā-kura, te whānau, te hapū, te iwi ki te whakaatu i te mahere me ngā whāinga o te kura hei hiki i te ako a ngā ākonga.

Me whai te poari o te kura (me te āwhina mai anō a te tumuaki me ngā kaiako) ki te āta whakatinana i te marautanga kia hāngai ai ki ngā take nui kua whakaatuhia i roto i ngā Whāinga Mātauranga o te Motu (NEGs) me ngā Aratohu Whakahaere Mahi mā te Motu (NAGs).

# Ngā Tau Ako me ngā Taumata o Te Marautanga o Aotearoa

Kei te whakaatu tēnei whakaahua i te honotanga i waenganui i ngā tau ako o te kura. Heoi anō, he nui ngā ākonga kāore i te whai i tēnei taura.





# Te Reo Māori





## *Ko te reo Māori te kākahu o te whakaaro, te huarahi i te ao tūroa*

*(nā Tā Hēmi Henare, 1984)*

Ko te tūāpapa o tēnei wāhanga ako, ko te tūhononga o ngā tini āhuetanga reo ā-waha, ā-tinana, ā-tā hei whakakākahu i te whakaaro, i te wairua, i te kare ā-roto hoki kia hāngai ki ngā tikanga me ngā ture o te reo Māori.

### **Te Whaitake o te Reo Māori**

Ko tā te reo Māori he aro ki te mana motuhake o te tamaiti me ōna takenga katoa – takenga reo, takenga tangata, takenga tikanga, takenga wairua. Ko te reo te whakapuakitanga o te whakaaro. Ka noho tahi te whakaaro me te reo.

E eke ai te ākongā ki ngā taumata o te mātauranga i ērā atu wāhanga ako, me eke ki te ikeiketanga o te reo. Mā reira e ū ai tērā whakatauākī a Tā Hēmi Henare. Nō reira, me tino matatau te ākongā ki te whakarongo, ki te kōrero, ki te pānui, ki te tuhituhi i te reo Māori kia tū pakari ai ia i roto i ōna ao katoa.

He mea nui te whakapakari i ngā pūkenga reo katoa o te ākongā, arā, ko ngā āheinga reo, ko te puna reo, ko ngā rautaki reo, ā, e tika ana kia mātau te ākongā ki ēnei wāhanga katoa. Ahakoa kei tēhea taumata o te marautanga te tamaiti, ki te puta te hiahia me te māramatanga ki te ako, koirā te wā tika ki te whāngai i taua pūkenga, i taua momo reo rānei.

Nō reira, ko te āhua o te ako reo, he mea haere whakamua, hoki whakamuri, kātahi ka haere whakamua anō. Ehara i te mea ka ākona tētahi pūkenga o te reo, ā, ka mau i te ākongā mō ake tonu atu.

### **Te Hanga o tēnei Wāhanga Ako**






#### **He whenu**

E toru anake ngā whenu e kōkiri nei i ngā mahi o tēnei wāhanga ako – ko te taha Waha, ko te taha Tā, ko te taha Tinana. I pēnei ai kia kitea te whānuitanga o te reo tae atu ki te reo ā-tinana. Ko ngā āhuetanga o te whakarongo, o te kōrero, o te tuhituhi, o te pānui, o te mātakitaki me te whakaatu, ka kitea mai i roto i ēnei whenu e toru.

#### **He whāinga paetae matua**

Hei raranga i ngā whenu e toru, arā ētahi whāinga paetae matua e toru hei whakawhānui, hei kōtuitui i te ako o te reo. Ahakoa te taumata, ahakoa te whenu, e hāngai tonu ana ēnei whāinga paetae e toru.

Ko te whāinga paetae matua tuatahi e pā ana ki ngā āheinga reo, arā, ki te pūtake o te whakawhitinga kōrero me te whakaaro e kawea ana i roto i te whakawhitinga. Me kī, ko te tuatahi o ēnei whāinga paetae matua e pā ana ki te pūtake me te whai māramatanga o te whakawhitinga whakaaro.

ā-Waha	ā-Tā	ā-Tinana
 = whakarongo	 = pānui	 = whakarongo
 = kōrero	 = tuhituhi	 = kōrero
 = pānui	 = mātakitaki	 = mātakitaki
 = tuhituhi	 = whakaatu	 = whakaatu

Ko te whāinga paetae matua tuarua e pā ana ki te tipu o te puna kupu me ōna āhuatanga katoa, arā, te whakahua, te tikanga, me te whakatakoto o te kupu, o te reo tonu.

Ko te tuatoru o ngā whāinga paetae matua e pā ana ki ngā rautaki ako reo me ngā rautaki ako reo.

### He whāinga paetae

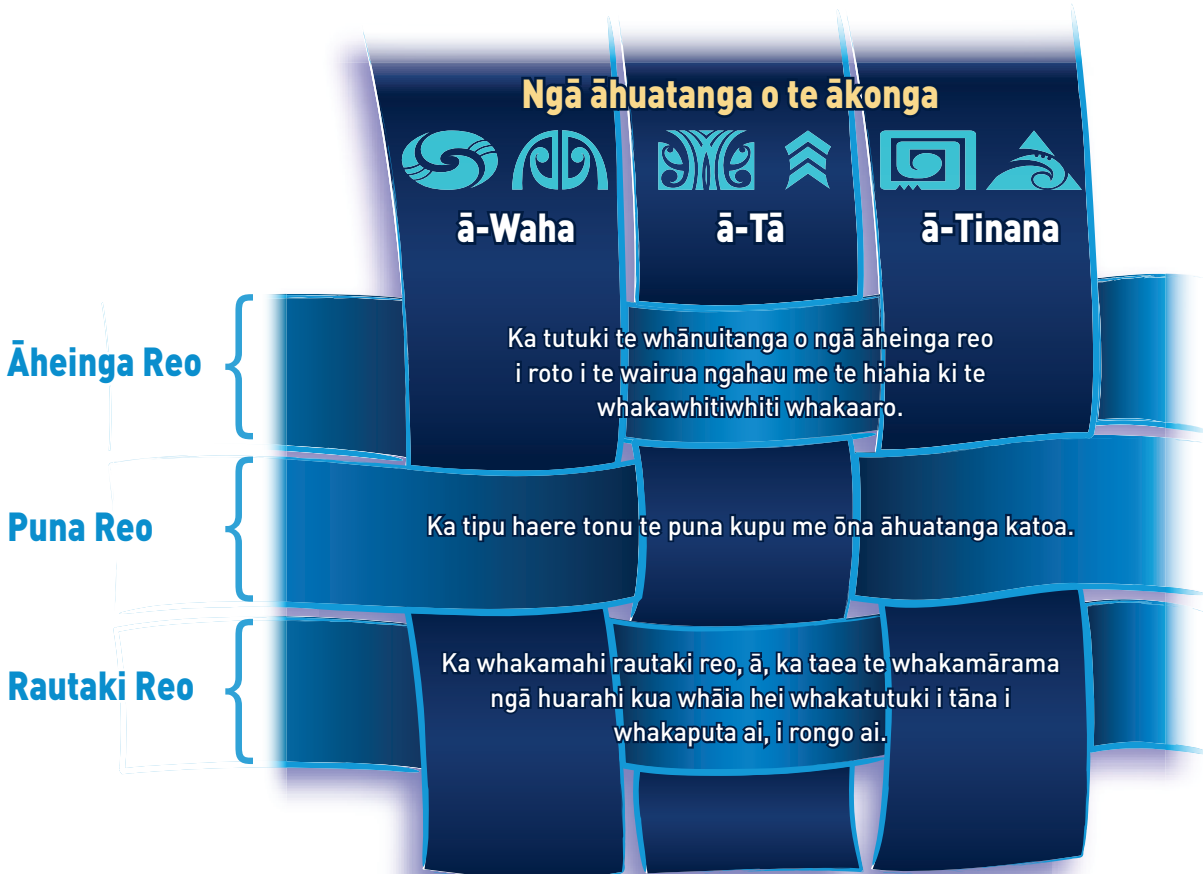
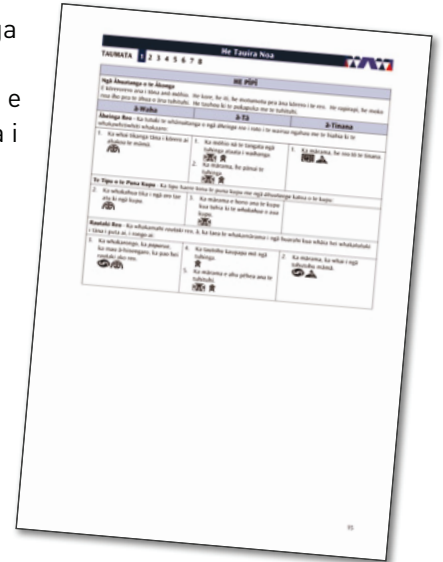
I roto i ēnei whāinga paetae matua, arā anō ētahi atu whāinga paetae e hāngai ana ki ngā whenu. Mā reira e kitea ai e te kaiako ka pēhea te āhua o te whāinga paetae matua i te wā e whakaako ana ia i te tuhituhi, i te kōrero, i te pānui, i te whakarongo, i ngā āhuatanga katoa o te reo.

### He taumata

E waru katoa ngā taumata hei tohu i te whanake haere o te ako i te reo. Kua whiriwhirihia ngā taumata i runga i te āhua o ngā ākonga i roto i ngā akomanga rumaki. Nā te whānui o te reo o ngā tamariki i te taenga atu ki te kura, kua āta whakatakotohia ētahi hīkoitanga e whā i roto i te taumata tuatahi e mārama ake ai te kite atu i te huarahi hei whaitanga mā tēnā tamaiti, mā tēnā tamaiti. Ko ngā ingoa o ērā hīkoitanga e whā, ko: He Pīpī, He Kaha, He Kaha Ake, He Pakari.

### Ngā āhuatanga o te ākonga

I tēnā, i tēnā taumata, kua whakaatuhia ngā āhuatanga o te ākonga i tōna tīmatanga i taua taumata, kia mōhio ai te kaiako ko tēhea te taumata tika mō tēnā ākonga, mō tēnā ākonga. Ko ngā whāinga paetae e tohu ana i te āhua o te tamaiti ina puta ia i taua taumata. Nō reira, ko ngā kōrero i Ngā Āhuatanga o te Ākonga, e whakaatu ana i te āhua o te tamaiti i te tīmatanga o te taumata, ā, ko ngā whāinga paetae e tohu ana i tōna āhua i te mutunga.





## HE PĪPĪ

### Ngā Āhuetanga o te Ākongā

E kōrerorero ana i tōna anō mōhiotanga. He kore, he iti, he motumotu pea āna kōrero i te reo. He rapirapi, he moko noa iho pea te āhua o āna tuhituhi. He tauhou ki te pukapuka me te tuhituhi.

### ā-Waha

### ā-Tā

### ā-Tinana

**Āheinga Reo** Ka tutuki te whānuitanga o ngā āheinga reo i roto i te wairua ngahau me te hiahia ki te whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro.

1. Ka whai tikanga āna kōrero, ahakoa te māmā.



1. Ka mōhio nā te tangata tonu ngā tuhinga ataata i waihanga.

2. Ka mārama he momo pānui te tuhinga.

1. Ka mārama he reo anō tō te tinana.

**Puna Reo** Ka tipu haere tonu te puna kupu me ōna āhuetanga katoa.

2. Ka whakahua tika i ngā oro tae atu ki ngā kupu.



3. Ka mārama e hono ana te kupu kua tuhia ki te whakahua o taua kupu.



**Rautaki Reo** Ka whakamahi rautaki reo, ā, ka taea te whakamārama ngā huarahi kua whāia hei whakatutuki i tāna i whakaputa ai, i rongo ai.

3. Ka whakarongo, ka paparua, ka pupuri ki te hinengaro, ka pao hei rautaki ako reo.

4. Ka tautohu kaupapa mō ngā tuhinga.

5. Ka mārama e ahu pēhea ana te tuhituhi.

2. Ka mārama, ka whai i ngā tohutohu māmā.





## HE KAHA

### Ngā Āhuetanga o te Ākongā


Kua mōhio ki te whakaputa kupu, rerenga poto rānei e rite ai ōna hiahia. Ka tapepe tonu te rere o te kupu. Ka mārama ia ki ngā kōrero māmā. He mōhio pea ki te tuhi i ētahi pū me ētahi tohu tuhituhi. Kua waia haere ki ngā tuhinga, engari ka mahue ngā kupu, ka aro kē ki te ia o te tuhinga.



### ā-Waha



### ā-Tā

### ā-Tinana


**Āheinga Reo** Ka tutuki te whānuitanga o ngā āheinga reo i roto i te wairua ngahau me te hiahia ki te whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro.


1. Ka whakapuaki rerenga kōrero māmā, pātai māmā rānei. 

1. Ka tuhi, ka tā i ōna whakaaro mai i tōna ake puna wheako reo.   
2. Ka mārama haere arā kē he kaipānuī i tua atu i a ia. 



1. Ka mārama he reo anō tō te tinana.  



**Puna Reo** Ka tipu haere tonu te puna kupu me ōna āhuetanga katoa.



2. Ka tika, ka pārekareka te whakahua. 

3. Ka mārama e noho pūmau ana te kaupapa o te kupu i ia tuhinga, ahakoa te tuhinga. 

**Rautaki Reo** Ka whakamahi rautaki reo, ā, ka taea te whakamārama ngā huarahi kua whāia hei whakatutuki i tāna i whakaputa ai, i rongu ai.

3. Ka whakarongo, ka paparua, ka pupuri ki te hinengaro, ka pao hei rautaki ako reo.   
4. Ka whakaputa pātai māmā hei rapu mōhiohio. 

4. Ka whai whakaaro ki ngā pikitia me ngā tohu tuhituhi, ā, ka tika tana whai haere i ngā kupu e pānuī ai ia i runga i te mārama.   
5. Ka mārama he take tonu tō te tohu tuhituhi me te āputa i waenganui i ngā kupu. 

2. Ka whai whakaaro ki te reo ā-tinana e mārama ai ētahi tohutohu ā-waha, ā, ka whakatinana ai.  



## HE KAHA AKE

### Ngā Āhuetanga o te Ākongā



Kua whakapuaki rerenga kōrero māmā, pātai rānei ahakoa tika, ahakoa hē. Ka mārama ia ki ngā kōrerorero. Kua mōhio kē ki te hanga kupu. Ka kitea te tūhononga o te oro ki te pū, ā, ka taea te whai i ngā tauira reo a te kaiako. Kua mōhio he take anō tō te tuhituhi, te pū, te kupu, te kīanga, te rerenga. Ka pānui kia mārama ai ki te tikanga matua o te pānui.




### ā-Waha


### ā-Tā

### ā-Tinana



**Āheinga Reo** Ka tutuki te whānuitanga o ngā āheinga reo i roto i te wairua ngahau me te hiahia ki te whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro.


1. Ka mārama ia ki ētahi reo ā-waha. 
2. Ka whānui ake ngā whakaaro kia taea ai te whakaahua i te āhua o ētahi mahi, ētahi mea, ētahi āhuetanga rānei. 

1. Ka whai tikanga āna tuhinga, āna tānga. 
2. Ka whai whakaaro ake ki te kaipānui. 
3. Ka mōhio ki ngā take e ngākaunui ana ia ki ētahi pakiwaitara, me ētahi reo ataata. 



1. Ka mārama he reo anō tō te tinana. 




**Puna Reo** Ka tipu haere tonu te puna kupu me ōna āhuetanga katoa.


3. Ka tika te whai i ētahi ture o te reo. 
4. Ka whakapuaki kupu āhua hei whakaniko i ngā kōrero. 

4. Ka tautohu i te kupu ahakoa te horopaki. 

**Rautaki Reo** Ka whakamahi rautaki reo, ā, ka taea te whakamārama ngā huarahi kua whāia hei whakatutuki i tāna i whakaputa ai, i rongo ai.

5. Ka mārama he momo raupapa te kōrero me te tuhinga. 
6. Ka tūhono i ōna wheako whaiaro ki tāna i rongo ai, i pānui ai hei rautaki rapu māramatanga. 

5. Ka tūhono i te pū ki te oro tika hei rautaki pānui, hei rautaki tātaki kupu auau te puta. 
6. Ka hoki anō ki te pānui hei whakatika i ngā hē. 
7. Ka tiri haere i ōna whakaaro i mua i te tuhinga. 

2. Ka whai whakaaro ki te reo ā-tinana e mārama ai ētahi tohutohu ā-waha, ā, ka whakatinana ai. 





## HE PAKARI

### Ngā Āhuatanga o te Ākongā



Maringi ana te kupu, ngāwari ana te kōrero i te reo. Kua mārama ia ki ngā kōrero e rangona ana. Kua mōhio ki te kōtui i te tangi ki te pū, ki te kupu, ā, ka mārama hoki tāna i pānui ai. Kua mōhio kē ki te tuhi i ētahi rerenga māmā ahakoa tika, ahakoa hē. He māia te whakawhitiwhiti kōrero ki ētahi atu, he pakari nō tōna reo.



### ā-Waha


### ā-Tā

### ā-Tinana


**Āheinga Reo** Ka tutuki te whānuitanga o ngā āheinga reo i roto i te wairua ngahau me te hiahia ki te whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro.



1. Ka mārama ki ngā reo ā-puta e hāngai ana ki ōna wheako whaiaro. 
2. Ka whakapuaki kōrero e hāngai ana ki ngā kaupapa o te wā. 

1. Ka tautohu, ka tā i ētahi momo reo tuhi me ngā reo ataata. 
2. Ka mārama nō te kaituhi me te kaitā te whakaaro me ngā mōhioatanga. 



1. Ka mārama he reo anō tō te tinana. 



**Puna Reo** Ka tipu haere tonu te puna kupu me ōna āhuatanga katoa.


3. Ka whakamahi kupu honohono ruarua nei. 

3. Ka whai whakaaro atu ki ngā kupu hou i roto i ngā tuhinga. 
4. Ka tātaki tika i ngā kupu o tana puna kupu. 

**Rautaki Reo** Ka whakamahi rautaki reo, ā, ka taea te whakamārama ngā huarahi kua whāia hei whakatutuki i tāna i whakaputa ai, i rongo ai.

4. Ka whakaputa pātai hei whakawhānui ake i ōna mōhioatanga, i ōna whakaaro. 
5. Ka whakaaro ake, ka kōrero ake mō te kaupapa matua o te tuhinga i mua i te tuhituhi. 

5. Ka whakatika i ētahi o ana hapa pānui, hapa tuhituhi. 
6. Ka whakamahi i ngā wheako whaiaro, ā, ka aro atu ki ngā āhuatanga o te tuhituhi me te tā hei rautaki rapu māramatanga. 

2. Ka mārama, ka whai i ngā whakaritenga me ngā tohutohu wāhanga maha. 



## Ngā Āhuetanga o te Ākongā



Maringi noa mai ana ngā kupu. Ka whakaputa pātai noa, pātai hāngai tonu. Ka whakaputa kōrero noa ki ōna hoa. Ka mōhio he wā anō ki te kōrero ki tētahi, he wā anō ki te whakarongo. He mōhio ki te tuhi (me te tika o te tuhi) i ētahi whakaaro e rua, neke atu i roto i te rerenga kotahi. He mārama āna tuhinga.




### ā-Waha


### ā-Tā

### ā-Tinana


**Āheinga Reo** Ka tutuki te whānuitanga o ngā āheinga reo i roto i te wairua ngahau me te hiahia ki te whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro.


1. Ka whakawhitiwhiti kōrero, ka whakaraupapa kōrero hei whakatutuki kaupapa. 
2. Ka mārama ia ki ngā reo ā-puta e pā ana ki ētahi kaupapa motuhake. 

1. Ka whakaputa i ōna whakaaro me ngā whakaaro o ētahi atu i roto i āna tuhinga me āna tānga. 
2. Ka tautohu, ka tā i ngā āhuetanga ake o ētahi momo reo tuhi me ngā reo ataata. 
3. Ka aro atu ki te pūtake o te tuhinga me te kaipānui. 


1. Ka mārama ki ētahi āhuetanga reo ā-tinana. 





**Puna Reo** Ka tipu haere tonu te puna kupu me ōna āhuetanga katoa.


3. Ka māia, ka tika anō tana whakamahi i ētahi kupu honohono, kupu mahi, kupu āhua, rerenga kōrero hoki e kawē ana i ngā kare ā-roto. 

4. Ka tika te tātaki kupu hou, i runga i tana mōhio ki te hono i te pū ki te oro tika. 

**Rautaki Reo** Ka whakamahi rautaki reo, ā, ka taea te whakamārama ngā huarahi kua whāia hei whakatutuki i tāna i whakaputa ai, i rongo ai.

4. Ka kōrero kia whānui ake, kia mārama ake, kia hōhonu ake ngā whakaaro. 

5. Ka whakamahi rautaki rapu māramatanga mō ngā tuhinga me ngā reo ataata e tauhou ana ki a ia. 
6. Ka pānui wahangū i ētahi wā. 
7. Ka whakarite mahere hei whakatakoto whakaaro. 
8. Ka mārama haere ki te āhua o te kōwae me te hua o te whakamahi tohu tuhituhi i roto i ngā tuhinga. 

2. Ka hāngai te āhua o tōna reo me tōna tinana ki tāna i kī ai. 





## Ngā Āhuetanga o te Ākongā

Kua māia ki te kōrero ki ngā tāngata katoa, ki ngā kaiako, ngā hoa, ngā mātua. Ka whakamahi i te reo kia hāngai ki te hunga whakarongo me te kaupapa. Ka whakamahi i te reo hei whakahoki whakaaro. Kua waia haere ki ngā momo tuhinga. Kua mōhio hoki he hua ka puta ki a ia i te tuhituhi.

### ā-Waha


### ā-Tā

### ā-Tinana

**Āheinga Reo** Ka tutuki te whānuitanga o ngā āheinga reo i roto i te wairua ngahau me te hiahia ki te whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro.

1. Ka mārama ki ētahi kōrero āhua roa tonu.




2. Ka whakapuaki kōrero hei whakaputa māramatanga, tautohetohe rānei kia puta ai te reo whakakapi, te reo patapatai me te reo whakatau. 

1. Ka tautohu, ka tā i ngā tino āhuetanga o ngā momo reo tuhi, reo tā maha.



2. Ka pakari te tuhi me te tā i ngā momo reo tuhi me ngā reo ataata e taunga ana ia.





1. Ka mārama ki te reo ā-tinana, ahakoa he ōpaki, he ōkawa rānei te horopaki. 

**Puna Reo** Ka tipu haere tonu te puna kupu me ōna āhuetanga katoa.

3. Ka whakanikoniko i āna kōrero, tuhinga rānei ki ngā kupu taurite, kupu āhua nā te whānui haere o tana puna kupu.




3. Ka tika te tātaki kupu hou ahakoa te horopaki. 


4. Ka mārama ki ētahi kupu ake o tētahi kaupapa motuhake. 


**Rautaki Reo** Ka whakamahi rautaki reo, ā, ka taea te whakamārama ngā huarahi kua whāia hei whakatutuki i tāna i whakaputa ai, i rongo ai.


4. Ka mārama ki te anga o ngā momo kōrero Māori ake nei.





5. Ka pānui wahangū, ā-waha rānei hei whakatutuki i ōna hiahia. 

6. Ka whakamahi rautaki whānui ki te āta whakapūmau i te māramatanga o ngā tuhinga me ngā reo ataata maha. 

7. Ka whakamahi i ētahi rautaki rangahau. 

8. Ka whakamahi mahere hei whakatakoto, hei whakaraupapa i ngā whakaaro. 

9. Ka whakatika i āna hapa tuhi me te āhua o te whakatakoto whakaaro kia mārama ake ai te tuhinga. 

10. Ka whaihua ake āna tuhinga i te noho raupapa mai o ngā whakaaro i roto i ngā kōwae me te whakamahi tohu tuhituhi. 

2. Ka hāngai te reo ā-waha, ā-tinana ki te kaupapa o te kōrero.





## Ngā Āhuetanga o te Ākongā



He whānui tōna reo kōrero – ka taea te tautohetohe, te tuku pātai, te whakaputa i ngā kare ā-roto, te kōrero whakanene. He hāngai tana kōrero ki te kaupapa, ki te wheako rānei o te wā. He rawe āna tuhinga, ā, kua mōhio haere ki ētahi momo tuhinga pērā i te pūrongo, te paki, te whakamārama, te whakaputa whakaaro. Kua whakamātau ki te pānui i ngā momo tuhinga maha nā te rahi haere o te puna pūkenga pānui.




### ā-Waha


### ā-Tā

### ā-Tinana


**Āheinga Reo** Ka tutuki te whānuitanga o ngā āheinga reo i roto i te wairua ngahau me te hiahia ki te whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro.


1. Ka whakatairite, ka tohutohu, ahakoa te horopaki, i ētahi kaupapa ōpaki, ōkawa rānei. 
2. Ka whakapuaki patapatai hāngai tonu, kōrero whakamārama, tautohetohe rānei kia puta ai te reo hīkaro, te reo whakamana hoki. 

1. Ka mārama ki ngā rerekētanga o tā te kaupānui titiro i tā te kaituhi, kaitā rānei. 
2. Ka tīpako i ngā āhuetanga o ngā momo reo tuhi hei whakaniko i ngā tuhinga pono me ngā tuhinga auaha. 
3. Ka whai whakaaro ake ki te pūtake o te tuhituhi me te kaupānui. 




1. Ka mārama ki te reo ā-tinana i ngā horopaki huhua, ahakoa ōpaki, ōkawa rānei. 





**Puna Reo** Ka tipu haere tonu te puna kupu me ōna āhuetanga katoa.


3. Ka mārama, ka whakamahi i ngā kīanga whakaahua, kīanga whakarite hei whakaniko i te kaupapa. 

4. Ka tika te tātaki kupu hou me te whai i ngā ture o te reo. 

**Rautaki Reo** Ka whakamahi rautaki reo, ā, ka taea te whakamārama ngā huarahi kua whāia hei whakatutuki i tāna i whakaputa ai, i rongo ai.

4. Ka whakarongo kia mōhio ai ia me pēhea te arotake, te whakawā, te wetewete i ngā hīkarotanga. 
5. Ka matatau te rere me te whakahāngai i te reo whakawhitiwhiti, te reo whakanene me ngā kōrero tinihanga. 
6. Ka whakamārama i te hononga o ngā momo kōrero Māori ake nei, kōrero kē atu hoki i roto i tētahi kaupapa ōkawa. 

5. Ka whakamahi i ētahi rautaki rangahau mō te huhua o ngā take. 
6. Ka tukatuka, ka whakahāngai i ngā mōhiohio. 
7. Ka whakarōpū i ngā whakaaro e ōrite ana, e hāngai ana ki roto i tētahi mahere tuhituhi, kia kitea ai te noho raupapa mai o te tuhinga. 
8. Ka rāwekeweke i ngā āhuetanga reo me te hanganga o te tuhinga kia rangona ai tōna ake reo. 

2. Ka hāngai te reo ā-waha, ā-tinana ki te kaupapa. 





## Ngā Āhuatanga o te Ākongā



Ka whakapuaki i ngā momo reo mō ngā horopaki ōkawa, ōpaki hoki. Ka haere tonu te whakapārekareka i te rere o te reo ki ngā āhuatanga Māori ake nei. He whaihua, he mārama āna tuhinga i ngā momo tuhinga huhua noa.


### ā-Waha



### ā-Tā

### ā-Tinana


**Āheinga Reo** Ka tutuki te whānuitanga o ngā āheinga reo i roto i te wairua ngahau me te hiahia ki te whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro.


1. Ka whakamārama, ka tautohetohe rānei i tētahi kaupapa e puta ai te reo hīkaro, te reo whakamana, me te reo whakaahua. 
2. Ka āta whakarongo, ka whakawā, ka wetewete, ka whakatau hīkaro mō tētahi kaupapa. 

1. Ka tautohu, ka arohaehae i ngā āhuatanga ake me ngā tikanga mahi o ētahi momo reo tuhi, reo ataata o tēnā, o tēnā kaituhi, kaitā rānei. 


1. Ka mārama ki te reo ā-tinana i ngā horopaki huhua, ahakoa ōpaki, ōkawa rānei. 
2. Ka whakamahi i ngā wāhanga o te tinana hei whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro, kare ā-roto. 





**Puna Reo** Ka tipu haere tonu te puna kupu me ōna āhuatanga katoa.


3. Ka tika tana whai i te nuinga o ngā ture o te reo. 

2. Ka hāngai ngā kupu me te āhua tonu o te whakatakoto kupu ki te kaupapa. 

**Rautaki Reo** Ka whakamahi rautaki reo, ā, ka taea te whakamārama ngā huarahi kua whāia hei whakatutuki i tāna i whakaputa ai, i rongo ai.

4. Ka whakarite, ka whakamārama i tētahi kaupapa kia kitea ai te āhua o ngā momo kōrero Māori ake nei, ahakoa te kaupapa. 

3. Ka whaihua āna rautaki rangahau, ka tika hoki tana whakamahi i ngā rauemi rangahau. 
4. Ka kōtuitui rautaki e mārama ai te pānui me te mātakitaki. 
5. Ka aro atu ki te noho raupapa mai o ngā whakaaro i roto i āna tuhinga, kia mārama ake ai ki te kaipānui. 
6. Ka whakamahi i ngā āhuatanga maha o ngā momo reo tuhi hei whakaniko i ngā tuhinga whānui, hei akiaki anō i te kaipānui kia whai whakaaro ake ki te kaupapa. 

3. Ka hāngai te reo ā-waha me te reo ā-tinana ki te kaupapa. 



## Ngā Āhuetanga o te Ākongā

Kei te hurihuri, kei te whakapārekareka i te reo, ahakoa te kaupapa, kia hāngai ki ngā rōpū whānui tonu me te mau tonu ki te tikanga, ahakoa Māori ake nei, ahakoa reo kē atu. He whakarongo, he arohaehae, he tautohetohe, he whakahoki kōrero ki ētahi whakaaro kē atu. E whakamahia ana ngā wāhanga o te tinana hei whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro, kare ā-roto, me te mōhiohio.

### ā-Waha

### ā-Tā

### ā-Tinana

**Āheinga Reo** Ka tutuki te whānuitanga o ngā āheinga reo i roto i te wairua ngahau me te hiahia ki te whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro.

1. Ka whakapuaki i te reo Māori ake nei hei whakaahua pikitia ā-kupu.



2. Ka whakapuaki whakaaro mō ngā kaupapa, mō ngā ariā matua hoki o aua kaupapa, kia pai ai te whakatakoto tohetohenga, taunakitanga rānei hei whakaū i te whakaaro.



1. Ka whakaaro nuitia ngā pūkenga ka whakamahia e te kaituhi, e te kaitā e rangona ai tōna ake wairua tuhi, wairua tā rānei.



1. Ka mārama ki te reo ā-tinana i ngā horopaki huhua, ahakoa ōpaki, ōkawa rānei.



2. Ka whakamahi i ngā āhuetanga katoa o te reo me te tinana hei whakatau tika i ngā take, hei whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro, kare ā-roto, me te mōhiohio.



**Puna Reo** Ka tipu haere tonu te puna kupu me ōna āhuetanga katoa.

3. Ka whānui tonu ngā kupu me ngā momo rerenga e tika ana mō ētahi momo kōrero, pēnei i te matapaki, i te tuku pūrongo, i te taupatupatu, arā atu, arā atu.



4. Ka hāngai te whakatakoto kupu ki ngā ture o te reo.



2. Ka whānui te puna kupu e taea ai te tautoko, te whakawhitiwhiti māramatanga, te whakakotahi hei whakatau, hei whakaiti rānei.



**Rautaki Reo** Ka whakamahi rautaki reo, ā, ka taea te whakamārama ngā huarahi kua whāia hei whakatutuki i tāna i whakaputa ai, i rongo ai.

5. Ka arohaehae i ngā kōrero me ngā tuinga Māori ake i runga i te hāngai ki te kaupapa, ki te momo reo me te kaupānui, kaiwhakarongo rānei.



6. Ka tika te whakarāpopoto i ngā ariā matua o te kōrero ā-waha, ā-tuhi, ā-tā rānei.



3. Ka whakahiato, ka āta arohaehae i ngā kohinga hei rautaki whakaoti rangahau.



4. Ka arohaehae i ngā rautaki pānui e hāngai ana ki ngā take whānui.



5. Ka whakahāngai i ngā āhuetanga o te whakatakoto kōrero hei whakahi i te kaupānui kia aro mai ki tā te kaituhi e hiahia ai.



6. Ka āta whakamahi i ngā āhuetanga maha o ngā momo reo tuhi maha hei whakaniko i ngā tuinga whānui.



3. Ka hāngai te reo ā-waha me te reo ā-tinana ki te kaupapa.





## Ngā Āhuatanga o te Ākongā

Nā te whānui ake o te puna kupu ka kaha ake te tautoko, te whakawhitiwhiti māramatanga, te whakakotahi hei whakatau, hei whakaiti rānei. E whakamahi ana i ngā āhuatanga katoa o te reo me te tinana hei whakatau tika i ngā take, hei whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro, kare ā-roto me te mōhiohio. E takahuri ana i te reo mā te whakapārekareka, mā te kupu peha, mā te kupu huna.

### ā-Waha

### ā-Tā

### ā-Tinana

**Āheinga Reo** Ka tutuki te whānuitanga o ngā āheinga reo i roto i te wairua ngahau me te hiahia ki te whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro.

1. Ka mārama ki ngā tikanga peha i roto i te reo kōrero, te reo tuhi, me te reo ataata.



1. Ka matapaki, ka wetewete i ngā ariā ahurea me ngā ariā hapori hei tūāpapa mō te tuhinga me ngā reo ataata.



1. Ka mārama ki te reo ā-tinana i ngā horopaki huhua, ahakoa ōpaki, ōkawa rānei.
2. Ka whakamahi i ngā āhuatanga katoa o te reo me te tinana hei whakatau tika i ngā take, hei whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro, kare ā-roto, me te mōhiohio.



**Puna Reo** Ka tipu haere tonu te puna kupu me ōna āhuatanga katoa.

2. Ka whakaputa i ngā momo kōrero Māori ake nei, reo kē atu rānei hei whakaniko ake i te whakawhitinga.



2. Ka whānui ake te puna kupu e taea ai te tautoko, te whakawhitiwhiti māramatanga, te whakakotahi hei whakatau, hei whakaiti rānei.



**Rautaki Reo** Ka whakamahi rautaki reo, ā, ka taea te whakamārama ngā huarahi kua whāia hei whakatutuki i tāna i whakaputa ai, i rongo ai.

3. Ka mōhio me pēhea te whakapuaki whakaaro kia tino ū te māramatanga ki te kaiwhakarongo.
4. Ka whakamahi i te reo arohaehae hei whakaaroaro, hei tātari i ngā kōrero me ngā tuhinga.



3. Ka whakarite i ngā rautaki tukanga kia mārama ai ētahi tuhinga, ētahi reo ataata rongonui me ngā momo tuhinga mai i neherā tae noa ki tēnei wā.



4. Ka whakahāngai mōhiohio o te hanganga reo tuhi me te reo ataata hei rautaki rapu māramatanga.
5. Ka torotoro, ka whakahiato, ka whakarite i ngā rautaki rangahau mai i te puna mōhio whānui.
6. Ka whānui, ka pakari ngā rautaki tuhituhi e taea ai te whakangahau, te whakamōhio rānei i te kaipānui i roto i te wairua ngahau.



3. Ka hāngai te reo ā-waha me te reo ā-tinana ki te kaupapa.





## Ngā Āhuetanga o te Ākongā

Kua mārama ake, kua mātanga ake ki te mana o te reo kōrero me ōna āhuetanga katoa. E torotoro ana kia mārama ake ai ki a ia, ki ētahi atu rānei ngā whakaaro me ngā ariā hōhonu. Kua mōhio he mana tō te reo kōrero me te reo ā-tinana i roto i te kōrero. Ka māia tonu ki te pare i ngā whakararu me ngā pātai matawhawhati.

### ā-Waha

### ā-Tā

### ā-Tinana

**Āheinga Reo** Ka tutuki te whānuitanga o ngā āheinga reo i roto i te wairua ngahau me te hiahia ki te whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro.

1. Ka mārama ki ngā kōrero huna nā te mōhio ki te wāhi ki ētahi kaikōrero i roto i te kaupapa.

1. Ka mau ā-tuhi, ā-tānga hoki ngā whakatakotoranga me ngā āhuetanga o ngā momo reo tuhi maha.   
2. Ka kitea te hōhonutanga o te whakaaro me te hihiri ki te kaupapa i roto i āna tuhinga, ā, ka whaihua te nuinga o āna tuhinga.

1. Ka mārama ki te reo ā-tinana i ngā horopaki huhua ahakoa ōpaki, ōkawa rānei.   
2. Ka whakamahi i ngā āhuetanga katoa o te reo me te tinana hei whakatau tika i ngā take, hei whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro, kare ā-roto, me te mōhiohio.

**Puna Reo** Ka tipu haere tonu te puna kupu me ōna āhuetanga katoa.

2. Ka whakaputa i ngā kupu, ngā kīanga me ngā rerenga hei whakapuaki kare ā-roto.

3. Ka tino mārama āna tuhinga i te hāngai pū o ngā kupu, o ngā kōrero peha, o te whakatakoto kupu ki te kaupapa.

**Rautaki Reo** Ka whakamahi rautaki reo, ā, ka taea te whakamārama ngā huarahi kua whāia hei whakatutuki i tāna i whakaputa ai, i rongo ai.

3. Ka hanga kōrero kia whai i tāna ake whakatakoto hei whakatairanga, hei whakaniko, hei whakanui i tētahi āhuetanga.   
4. Ka tautohu, ka arohaehae i ngā tino āhuetanga o te reo me te whakaaturanga a te kaikōrero.

4. Ka whakarite rautaki rangahau hei whakawhānui ake i ōna pūkenga rangahau.   
5. Ka tīpako i tāna e hiahia ana mai i te puna reo me te puna tikanga kia taea ai te whakataurite i te tirohanga a te kaituhi ki tā te kaipānui.   
6. Ka mārama ki ngā kounga tuhituhi e hāngai ai te tuhinga ki te kaipānui, ki te kaupapa me te take i tuhia ai.

3. Ka hāngai te reo ā-waha me te reo ā-tinana ki te kaupapa.





āheinga reo	<i>language function</i>	rautaki	<i>strategy</i>
ahurea	<i>culture</i>	rāwekeweke	<i>manipulate</i>
āputa	<i>gap; space between</i>	reo ā-puta	<i>productive language</i>
arohaehae	<i>critique</i>	reo ā-tinana	<i>body language</i>
ā-tā (reo tā)	<i>language in a visual form</i>	takahuri	<i>amend, alter, change</i>
ā-tinana (reo o te tinana)	<i>paralinguistics; body language</i>	takenga	<i>origin</i>
auaha	<i>creative</i>	tapepe	<i>falter</i>
auau te puta	<i>high frequency</i>	tātaki	<i>spell</i>
ā-waha (reo ā-waha)	<i>oral language</i>	taunaki (-tanga)	<i>evidence</i>
hapa	<i>mistake; a slip</i>	taupatupatu	<i>debate</i>
hīkaro	<i>infer</i>	tautohetohe	<i>argue a point</i>
horopaki	<i>context</i>	tautohu	<i>identify</i>
kare ā-roto	<i>feeling; emotion</i>	tikanga peha	<i>narrative conventions</i>
kīanga	<i>phrase</i>	tinihanga	<i>joking around; teasing</i>
kōrero whakanene	<i>joke</i>	tiri	<i>share</i>
kōtui	<i>combine</i>	tohu tuhituhi	<i>punctuation</i>
kounga	<i>quality</i>	torotoro	<i>explore</i>
kōwae	<i>paragraph</i>	tūāpapa	<i>foundation; basis</i>
kupu āhua	<i>adjective</i>	tuhinga ataata	<i>visual language</i>
kupu honohono	<i>conjunction</i>	wahangū	<i>silent</i>
kupu taurite	<i>synonym</i>	waia haere	<i>become more familiar with</i>
mātanga	<i>clear</i>	wetewete	<i>analyse</i>
matapaki	<i>discuss</i>	whaiaro	<i>personal</i>
matawhawhati	<i>unexpected</i>	whakahiato	<i>collate; synthesize</i>
motumotu	<i>disjointed</i>	whakaihi	<i>excite</i>
ōkawa	<i>formal</i>	whakaniko	<i>embellish; enhance</i>
ōpaki	<i>informal</i>	whakarāpopoto	<i>summarise</i>
paparua	<i>repeat</i>	whakawā	<i>make a judgement or decision</i>
peha	<i>narrative</i>	wheako	<i>experience (noun)</i>
puna reo	<i>language knowledge</i>	wheako reo	<i>language experience</i>
pūrongo	<i>report</i>		
rapirapi	<i>scribble; scratch</i>		

# Pāngarau



## Kei hopu tōu ringa ki te aka tāepa, engari kia mau ki te aka matua

Mai rā anō, ahakoa ko wai te iwi, he mātauranga ō rātou e mārama ai rātou ki ngā pānga maha, ki ngā pānga rau o ngā āhuatanga i roto i ō rātou ao. Ko te mātauranga pāngarau tērā. Tērā ō tātou tīpuna Māori e tino mātau ana ki ngā pānga o roto i ngā ao i nōhia ai e ngā tamariki a Rangi rāua ko Papa. He āwhina nui tēnei mātauranga i ā rātou mahi o ia rā, pērā i te hanga whare, te whakaterere waka i te au moana, me te mahi māra kai. I te taenga mai o tauīwi, ka tino uru atu ō tātou tīpuna ki ngā mahi hou, pērā i te mahi tauhokohoko. He mea nui anō te mātauranga pāngarau kia eke ai rātou ki ngā taumata o ēnei mahi hou. I te takanga o te wā, kua whanake haere te mātauranga pāngarau puta noa i te ao, engari he āwhina nui tonu te pāngarau i roto i ngā whakanekeneke o tō tātou ao o ngā tau rua mano me tua atu. Ahakoa huri ki hea, kitea ai te mātauranga pāngarau e whakamahia ana i roto i ngā mahi o ia rā, i roto i ngā kaupapa ako katoa o te kura, i roto hoki i ngā tūranga mahi whānui tonu.

### Te Hanga o tēnei Wāhanga Ako

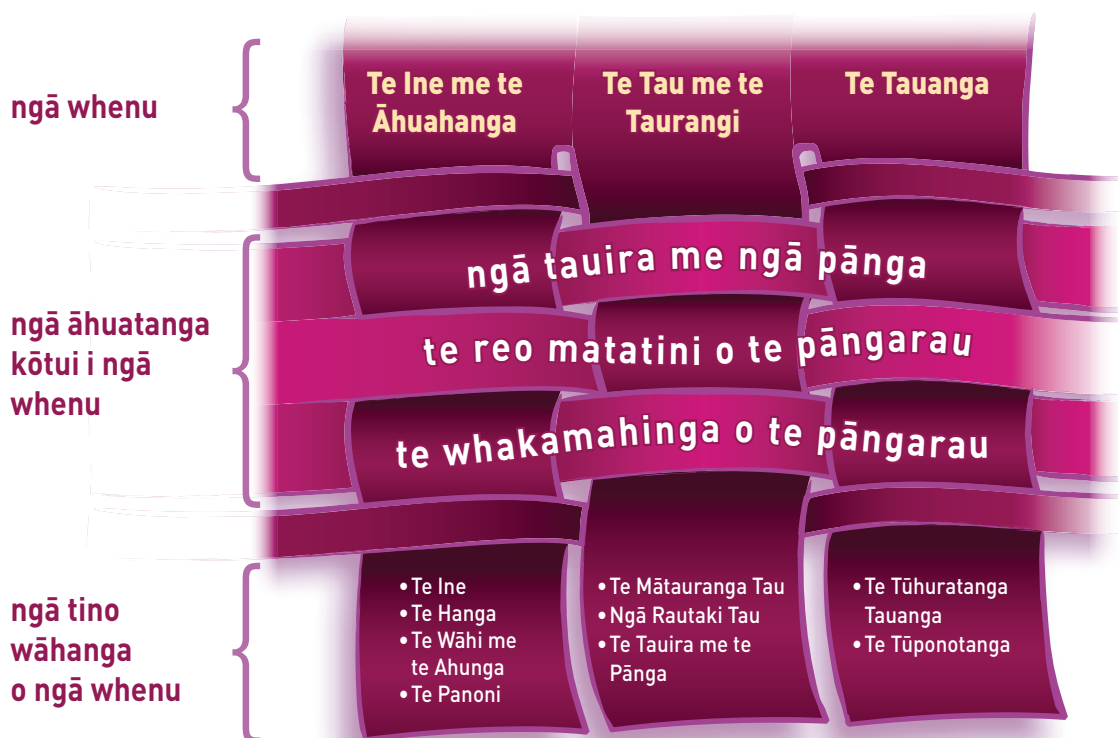
#### Ngā Whenu

E noho mai ana ngā kaupapa o te marautanga pāngarau ki ngā whenu e toru, arā, Te Tau me te Taurangi, Te Ine me te Āhuahanga, me Te Tauanga, mai i te Taumata 1 ki te Taumata 6. E rua anake ngā whenu o te Taumata 7 me te Taumata 8, arā, Te Taurangi me te Tuanaki, me Te Tauanga.

Kei roto anō i ia whenu ko ngā tino wāhanga, ā, kua tuhia ngā wāhanga paetae ki raro i ēnei tino wāhanga.

E toru ngā āhuatanga e kōtuiti ana i ngā whenu:

- Ngā Tauira me ngā Pānga  
Koia ko te pūtake o te pāngarau, arā, ko te tūhura, ko te whakamahia i ngā tauira me ngā pānga e puta ake ana i ngā rahinga, i ngā huinga raraunga, i ngā āhuatanga mokowā, i ngā āhuatanga rānei e pā ana ki te wā.
- Te Reo Matatini o te Pāngarau  
Kei roto tonu i te reo Māori ōna ake kupu, ōna ake rerenga kōrero hei whakaahua i ngā ariā matua o te pāngarau. Āpiti atu ki tēnei, ko ngā tohu pāngarau me ngā momo whakaahuahanga pērā i te tūtohi me te kauwhata. Katoa ēnei āhuatanga ka kīia ko 'Te Reo Matatini o te Pāngarau'. Ka tipu ana te tamaiti, ka mātau haere ia ki te reo matatini o te pāngarau, koia hoki te huarahi matua e mārama ai ia ki ngā ariā pāngarau, e whakawhitihiti kōrero ai, e eke panuku ai i ngā taumata o tēnei wāhanga ako.
- Te Whakamahinga o te Pāngarau  
Ka whātoro atu te pāngarau ki ērā atu wāhanga ako o te kura, otirā ki ngā kaupapa me ngā horopaki huhua o te whānau, o te hapū, o te iwi, o te hāpori, o te ao Māori, e ahu whakamua ai tātou i ēnei tū kaupapa katoa. He mea nui kia mārama haere te ākongi ki ēnei tini whakamahinga o te pāngarau, me te arohaehae anō i te takanga mai o te mātauranga pāngarau, te whaitakenga me te tika o te whakamahinga i te pāngarau.

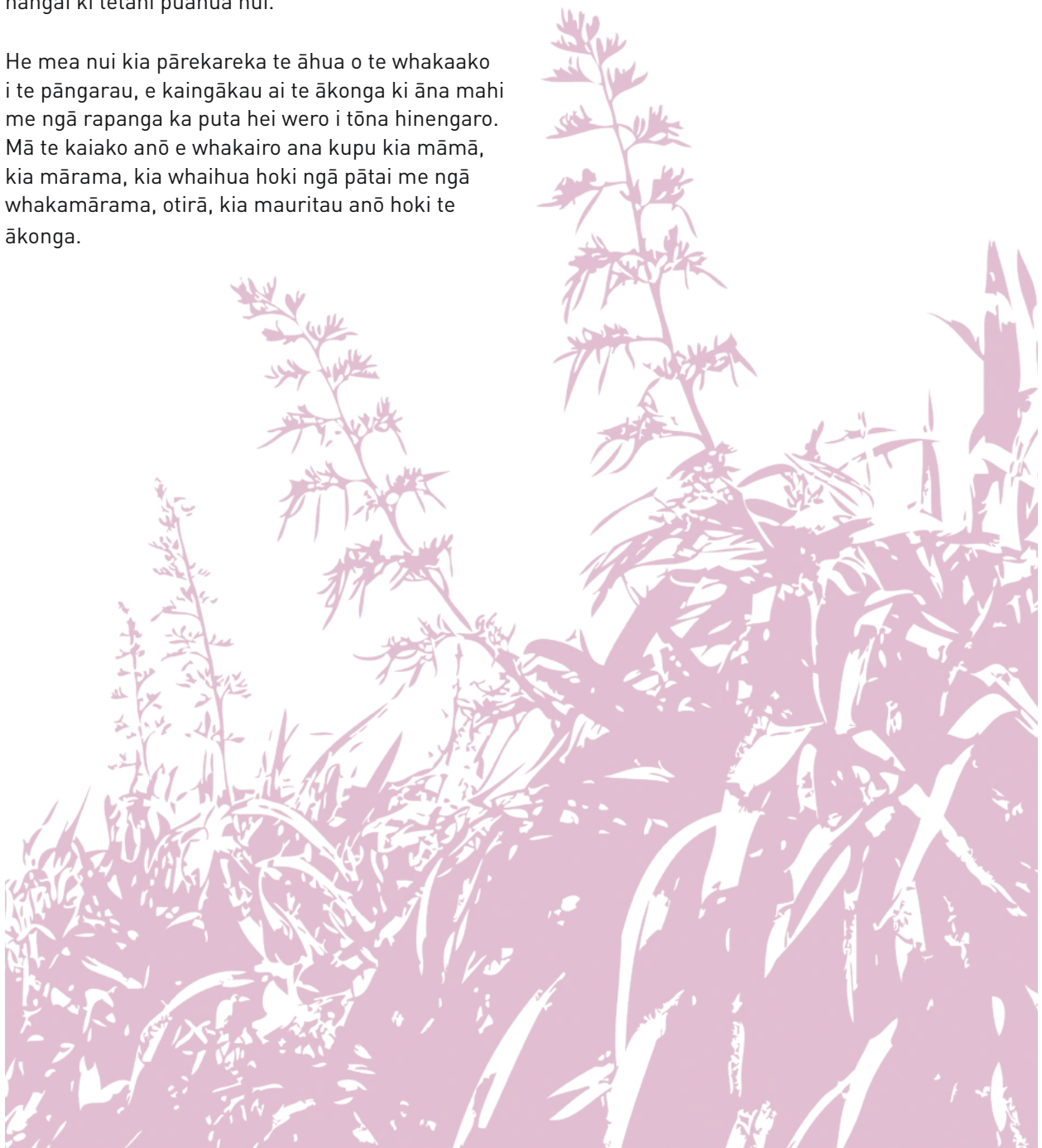


## Te Whaitake o te Ako i te Pāngarau

Ko tā te pāngarau, he whakapakari i te auhatanga o te ākongā, te whakaaro arohaehae, te whakaaro arorau me te whakaaro whaitake, me tōna āhei ki te whakatakoto rautaki, ki te whakaoti rapanga, ki te arotake, ki te whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro hoki.

E tika ana kia takea mai ngā mahi me ngā rapanga pāngarau i ngā horopaki Māori me ērā atu horopaki e taunga ana te ākongā. I roto i āna mahi pāngarau, ka whakamahi te ākongā i ngā momo rauemi me ngā taputapu e hāngai ana, ka hanga tauira, ka kimi pānga, ka matapae i te hua ka puta i tētahi mahi, ka parahau take, ka whakatau tata, ka tātai kia tōtika te otinga, ka kimi tauira, ā, ka whakawhānui i ngā kōrero mō tētahi pūāhua iti kia hāngai ki tētahi pūāhua nui.

He mea nui kia pārekareka te āhua o te whakaako i te pāngarau, e kaingākau ai te ākongā ki āna mahi me ngā rapanga ka puta hei wero i tōna hinengaro. Mā te kaiako anō e whakairo ana kupu kia māmā, kia mārama, kia whaihua hoki ngā pātai me ngā whakamārama, otirā, kia mauritau anō hoki te ākongā.





## Te Reo Matatini o te Pāngarau

Ka whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro, ka āta wānanga te ākonga i āna mahi pāngarau, mā te kupu (ā-waha, ā-tuhi), mā te tohu, me ngā momo whakaahuahanga e hāngai ana. He mea nui tēnei hei tautoko i te whakatutukitanga o ngā whāinga paetae e whai ake nei, e pakari anō ai te whakaaro arorau, te whakaaro arohaehae, te whakaaro whaitake me te auahatanga o te ākonga e hāngai ana ki tēnei taumata.

## Te Whakamahinga o te Pāngarau

Ka mōhio te ākonga, ka torotoro hoki ia i ngā whakamahinga o te pāngarau e hāngai ana ki tōna ake ao. Me kākahu anō ngā whāinga paetae ki ngā momo horopaki e taunga ana te ākonga.

### Te Tau me te Taurangi

#### Te Mātauranga Tau

1. Ka mōhio ki ngā tauoti 0–100:
  - te whakaingoa i ngā tohuta;
  - ngā raupapa tatauranga whakamua, whakamuri hoki;
  - ngā tikanga uara tū;
  - te rima me ngā tauhono;
  - ngā tauhono o te tekau;
  - te tekau me ngā tauhono;
  - ngā tau ngahuru;
  - te maha o ngā tekau me ngā tahi kei roto i tētahi tau;
  - te rahi me te hanga o tētahi tau.
2. Ka mōhio ki ngā hautau māmā, pērā i ngā haurua me ngā hauwhā:
  - te tuhi i ngā tohu hautau;
  - te tikanga o te taurunga me te tauraro;
  - te raupapa hautau māmā;
  - te whakatauiria i te hautau (pērā i te hurihanga  $\frac{3}{2}$ ).

### Te Ine me te Āhuahanga

#### Te Ine

1. Ka mārama ki ēnei āhuatanga o tētahi mea e taea ana te ine:
  - te roa;
  - te horahanga;
  - te rōrahi (kītanga);
  - te taumaha (papatipu);
  - te hurihanga;
  - te paemahana;
  - te wā;
  - te utu.
2. Ka mārama ki te tikanga o te ine, arā, ko te whakatairite i te mea e inea ana ki te rahi o tētahi waeine.
3. Ka whakamahi taputapu ine aronga kē.
4. Ka raupapa, ka whakatairite hoki i ngā inenga.
5. Ka tatau waeine māmā.
6. Ka mōhio ki te pūmautanga o tētahi inenga.

### Te Tauanga

#### Te Tūhuratanga Tauanga

1. Ka whai i ngā tikanga mō te tūhuratanga tauanga ki te whakatakoto, ki te whakautu pātai:
  - ka kohikohi raraunga;
  - ka wehewehe raraunga;
  - ka tatau raraunga;
  - ka hanga whakaari raraunga.
2. Ka mārama ki ngā whakaari raraunga.

#### Te Tūponotanga

3. Ka matapae, ka whakamātau i ngā putanga katoa o tētahi pūāhua tūponotanga whaitake māmā.



## Te Tau me te Taurangi

### Ngā Rautaki Tau

3. Ka whakaoti rapanga e whai wāhi mai ana te tauoti me te hautau māmā, ka whakamārama hoki i te:
- rautaki tatau;
  - rautaki whakarōpū;
  - rautaki tohatoha ōrite.

### Te Taurira me te Pānga

4. Ka hanga, ka whakarōa taurira tāruarua, taurira raupapa hoki.

## Te Ine me te Āhuahanga

### Te Hanga

7. Ka whakarōpū taonga i runga i te āhua o ngā taonga, pērā i te tae, te nui, me te maha o ngā tapa.
8. Ka mōhio ki ngā āhua ahu-2, pērā i te tapatoru, te tapawhā rite, te tapawhā hāngai, te porowhita, te taparima, te tapaono me te tapawaru.
9. Ka mōhio ki ngā āhua ahu-3, pērā i te pouaka, te rango me te poi.

### Te Wāhi me te Ahunga

10. Ka whai, ka hoatu hoki i ngā tohutohu mō te nekeneke e whai wāhi mai ana:
- te tawhiti;
  - te ahunga;
  - te hurihanga (hurihanga  $0, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{4}, 1, 1\frac{1}{4}, 1\frac{1}{2} \dots$ ).
11. Ka whakamārama i te wāhi noho o tētahi mea.

### Te Panoni

12. Ka tuhi, ka whakamārama i ngā hua o te neke, o te whakaata, o te huri i ngā āhua ahu-2 māmā.

## Te Tauanga



## Te Reo Matatini o te Pāngarau

Ka whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro, ka āta wānanga te ākonga i āna mahi pāngarau, mā te kupu (ā-waha, ā-tuhi), mā te tohu, me ngā momo whakaahuahanga e hāngai ana. He mea nui tēnei hei tautoko i te whakatutukitanga o ngā whāinga paetae e whai ake nei, e pakari anō ai te whakaaro arorau, te whakaaro arohaehae, te whakaaro whaitake me te auahatanga o te ākonga e hāngai ana ki tēnei taumata.

## Te Whakamahinga o te Pāngarau

Ka mōhio te ākonga, ka torotoro hoki ia i ngā whakamahinga o te pāngarau e hāngai ana ki tōna ake ao. Me kākahu anō ngā whāinga paetae ki ngā momo horopaki e taunga ana te ākonga.

### Te Tau me te Taurangi

#### Te Mātauranga Tau

1. Ka mōhio ki ngā tauoti 0–1000:
  - te whakaingoa i ngā tohutau;
  - ngā raupapa tatauranga whakamua, whakamuri hoki;
  - ngā tikanga uara tū;
  - te maha o ngā tahi, ngā tekau, me ngā rau kei roto i tētahi tau;
  - te rahi me te hanga o tētahi tau;
  - ngā tikanga o te taurua me te taukehe.
2. Ka mōhio ki ngā rearua tae atu ki te 20, me ngā haurua e whai pānga ana.
3. Ka mōhio ki ngā hautau, pērā i ngā haurua, ngā hautoru, ngā hauwhā, ngā haurima me ngā hautekau:
  - te tuhi i ngā tohu hautau;
  - te tikanga o te taurunga me te tauraro o tētahi hautau;
  - te raupapa hautau māmā me ngā hautau e ōrite ana te tauraro.

### Te Ine me te Āhuahanga

#### Te Ine

1. Ka hanga, ka whakamahi taputapu, waeine hoki e whaitake ana, ka whakaoti rapanga māmā:
  - te roa;
  - te horahanga;
  - te rōrahi (kītanga);
  - te taumaha (papatipu);
  - te koki;
  - te paemahana;
  - te wā;
  - te utu.
2. Ka mārama ki te tikanga o tētahi āwhata, arā, he wehewehenga, he tāruaruatanga o tētahi waeine.
3. Ka mōhio ki te wāwāhi, ki te tāpiri hoki i ngā inenga.
4. Ka mārama ki te rahi o ngā waeine aro whānui māmā.
5. Ka mārama ki te whaitakenga o tētahi inenga.

#### Te Hanga

6. Ka whakarōpū taonga i runga i te āhuahanga o aua taonga, ka whakamārama hoki i ngā rōpū.
7. Ka tautuhi, ka whakamārama i ngā āhua ahu-2 me ngā āhua ahu-3 e kitea mai ana i te taiao, i te hanga o ngā whare me ngā taonga o ia rā.

### Te Tauanga

#### Te Tūhuratanga Tauanga

1. Ka whai i ngā tikanga mō te tūhuratanga tauanga e whai wāhi mai ana te raraunga whakarōpū me te raraunga motumotu:
  - ka whakatakoto pātai;
  - ka kohikohi raraunga;
  - ka wehewehe raraunga;
  - ka hanga whakaari raraunga e whaitake ana;
  - ka whakaputa kōrero hei whakautu i te pātai i tūhuratia;
  - ka mārama ki ngā tikanga matatika e hāngai ana.
2. Ka arohaehae i ngā kōrero e pā ana ki ngā hua o tētahi tūhuratanga tauanga.
3. Ka whakaputa kōrero mō ngā āhuatanga o ētahi whakaari raraunga māmā.

#### Te Tūponotanga

4. Ka tautohu, ka matapae, ka whakamātau i ngā putanga o tētahi pūāhua tūponotanga whaitake:
  - ka mārama mēnā he ōrite, he rerekē, he rangirua rānei te tūponotanga o ētahi putanga.
5. Ka mōhio ki te reo māmā hei whakaatu tūponotanga.

## Te Tau me te Taurangi

### Ngā Rautaki Tau

4. Ka whakaoti rapanga e whai wāhi mai ana te tauoti me te hautau, ka whakamārama hoki i te:
  - rautaki tatau;
  - rautaki whakarōpū;
  - rautaki tohatoha ōrite;
  - rautaki wāwāhi tau tāpiripiri māmā.
5. Ka mārama ki te whaitakenga o te otinga o tētahi rapanga.

### Te Taurira me te Pānga

6. Ka mārama ki te tikanga he maha ngā wāwāhitanga o tētahi tau.
7. Ka hanga, ka whakaroa taurira raupapa, ka whakamārama hoki i te ture mō te whakaroa.

## Te Ine me te Āhuahanga

### Te Wāhi me te Ahunga

8. Ka hanga, ka whakamahi mahere māmā:
  - ka whakaatu taunga;
  - ka whakaatu ahunga;
  - ka whakamārama huarahi;
  - ka whakamārama tirohanga.
9. Ka whakamārama taunga, ahunga hoki o ngā wāhi matua o te kura, te tāone me te rohe.

### Te Panoni

10. Ka neke, ka whakaata, ka huri, ka whakarahi i ngā āhua ahu-2, ka tuhi, ka whakamārama hoki i ēnei panoni.

## Te Tauanga



## Te Reo Matatini o te Pāngarau

Ka whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro, ka āta wānanga te ākonga i āna mahi pāngarau, mā te kupu (ā-waha, ā-tuhi), mā te tohu, me ngā momo whakaahuahanga e hāngai ana. He mea nui tēnei hei tautoko i te whakatutukitanga o ngā whāinga paetae e whai ake nei, e pakari anō ai te whakaaro arorau, te whakaaro arohaehae, te whakaaro whaitake me te auhatanga o te ākonga e hāngai ana ki tēnei taumata.

## Te Whakamahinga o te Pāngarau

Ka mārama te ākonga, ka torotoro hoki ia i ngā tini whakamahinga o te pāngarau e hāngai ana ki te hapori e noho nei ia. Me kākahu anō ngā whāinga paetae ki ngā momo horopaki o te hapori.

### Te Tau me te Taurangi

#### Te Mātauranga Tau

1. Ka mōhio ki ngā tau  
0 – 1 000 000:
  - te whakaingoa i ngā tohutau;
  - ngā momo raupapa tatauranga tauoti;
  - ngā meka matua mō te tāpiri, te tango, me te whakarea;
  - te whakaawhiwhi tauoti, tau ā-ira hoki ki te 1, te 10, te 100 rānei e pātata ana;
  - ngā tikanga uara tū o ngā tauoti me ngā tau ā-ira (kia toru ngā mati ā-ira):
  - te maha o ngā haurau, ngā hautekau, ngā tahi, ngā tekau, ngā rau me ngā mano kei roto i tētahi tau;
  - te rahi me te hanga o tētahi tau.
2. Ka mōhio ki ngā hautau (tae atu ki ngā hautau nui ake i te kotahi) me ngā tau ā-ira:
  - te raupapa hautau (hautahi), tau ā-ira hoki;
  - ngā raupapa tatauranga hautau, tau ā-ira hoki (hautekau, haurau).

### Te Ine me te Āhuahanga

#### Te Ine

1. Ka whakaoti rapanga whaitake e whai wāhi mai ana:
  - te roa;
  - te horahanga;
  - te rōrahi (kītanga);
  - te taumaha (papatipu);
  - te koki;
  - te paemahana;
  - te wā;
  - te utu.
2. Ka whakamahi i ngā momo āwhata maha e whakaatu ana i ngā waeine tauoti me ngā waeine hautau.
3. Ka whiriwhiri i te horahanga o ngā tapawhā hāngai kua hangaia ki te tukutuku tapawhā rite.
4. Ka whiriwhiri i te rōrahi o ngā poro tapawhā hāngai kua hangaia ki te mataono rite.
5. Ka mārama ki te rahi o ngā waeine aro whānui.
6. Ka mārama ki te whaitakenga o tētahi inenga.

#### Te Hanga

7. Ka whakamārama i te āhuahanga o ngā āhua ahu-2 me ngā āhua ahu-3.
8. Ka tuhi hoahoa, ka hanga tauira hei whakaatu taonga.
9. Ka tūhura i ngā raumata e hangaia ai he āhua ahu-3 māmā.

### Te Tauanga

#### Te Tūhuratanga Tauanga

1. Ka whai i ngā tikanga mō te tūhuratanga tauanga e whai wāhi mai ana te raraunga whakarōpū matatini, te raraunga motumotu tatau, me te raraunga houanga:
  - ka whakatakoto pātai;
  - ka kohikohi raraunga;
  - ka wehewehe raraunga;
  - ka hanga whakaari raraunga e whaitake ana;
  - ka whakaputa kōrero hei whakautu i te pātai i tūhuratia;
  - ka mārama ki ngā tikanga matatika e hāngai ana.
2. Ka tautohu i ngā tauira me ngā ia e kitea mai ana i roto i tētahi huinga raraunga, i waenganui rānei i ētahi huinga raraunga.
3. Ka arotake i te whaihua o ngā momo whakaari raraunga rerekē hei whakaatu i ngā hua o tētahi tūhuratanga tauanga.



## Te Tau me te Taurangi

### Ngā Rautaki Tau

3. Ka kōwhiri, ka whakamārama i te rautaki e tino whaihua ana hei whakaoti rapanga e whai wāhi mai ana te tauoti, te hautau, te tau ā-ira me te ōrau:
  - rautaki tatau;
  - rautaki whakarōpū;
  - rautaki tohatoha ōrite;
  - rautaki tāpiripiri;
  - rautaki whakarea māmā.
4. Ka mārama ki te whaitakenga o te otinga o tētahi rapanga.

### Te Taura me te Pānga

5. Ka mōhio ki ngā wāwāhitanga tāpiripiri o tētahi tau.
6. Ka whakamahi rautaki tāpiripiri ki te whiriwhiri i tētahi tau o roto i tētahi tauira tau.
7. Ka whakamahi rautaki āhuahanga ki te whiriwhiri i tētahi āhua o roto i tētahi tauira āhua.
8. Ka whakamahi rautaki taurangi māmā ki te whiriwhiri i tētahi huānga o roto i tētahi tauira raupapa.

## Te Ine me te Āhuahanga

### Te Wāhi me te Ahunga

10. Ka hanga, ka whakamahi pūnaha ki te:
  - whakaatu taunga;
  - whakaatu ahunga;
  - whakamārama huarahi.
11. Ka whakamahi i ngā tōpito matua ki te whakamārama taunga, ahunga hoki.

### Te Panoni

12. Ka whakamārama i ngā panoni (whakaata, hurihanga, nekehanga, whakarahinga rānei), e hua ai tētahi mātātuhi, mai i tōna mātāoroko.

## Te Tauanga

### Te Tūponotanga

4. Ka tūhura i ngā pūahua tūponotanga māmā:
  - ka whakatairite i ngā putanga whakamātau me ngā matapaenga;
  - ka mārama ki ngā putanga katoa e taea ana;
  - ka mārama ki te taurangitanga o ngā putanga;
  - ka mārama ki te wehe kētanga o ngā whakamātau me ngā putanga.
5. Ka mōhio ki te whānuitanga o te reo hei whakaatu tūponotanga.
6. Ka whakamahi āwhata ki te whakaatu tūponotanga.



## Te Reo Matatini o te Pāngarau

Ka whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro, ka āta wānanga te ākonga i āna mahi pāngarau, mā te kupu (ā-waha, ā-tuhi), mā te tohu, me ngā momo whakaahuahanga e hāngai ana. He mea nui tēnei hei tautoko i te whakatutukitanga o ngā whāinga paetae e whai ake nei, e pakari anō ai te whakaaro arorau, te whakaaro arohaehae, te whakaaro whaitake me te auhatanga o te ākonga e hāngai ana ki tēnei taumata.

## Te Whakamahinga o te Pāngarau

Ka mārama te ākonga, ka torotoro hoki ia i ngā tini whakamahinga o te pāngarau e hāngai ana ki te hapori e noho nei ia. Me kākahu anō ngā whāinga paetae ki ngā momo horopaki o te hapori.

### Te Tau me te Taurangi

#### Te Mātauranga Tau

1. Ka mōhio ki:
  - ngā meka whakawehe matua;
  - te whakaawhiwhi tauoti, tau ā-ira hoki.
2. Ka mōhio ki ngā tikanga o:
  - te tau tōraro me te tau tōrunga;
  - te tau toitū;
  - te ōwehenga;
  - te uara tū o ngā tau ā-ira;
  - te maha o ngā haumano, ngā haurau, ngā hautekau, ngā tahi, ngā rau me ngā mano kei roto i tētahi tau ā-ira (tae atu kia 3 ngā mati ā-ira).
3. Ka mōhio ki te kimi mai i ngā taurea me ngā tauwehe o tētahi tau.
4. Ka mōhio ki ngā hautau, ngā tau ā-ira, ngā ōrau me ngā ōwehenga māmā:
  - ngā huringa hautanga: hautau ↔ tau ā-ira ↔ ōrau;
  - ngā raupapa tatauranga tau ā-ira (haumano, haurau, hautekau);
  - te raupapa hautau, tau ā-ira, ōrau hoki;
  - te whiriwhiri hautau ōrite.

### Te Ine me te Āhuahanga

#### Te Ine

1. Ka whakaoti rapanga whaitake:
  - ka kōwhiri, ka whakamahi i te waeine e hāngai ana mō te roa, te horahanga, te rōrahi (kītanga), te papatipu (taumaha), te paemahana, te koki me te wā;
  - ka whakawhitiwhiti waeine māmā;
  - ka whakamahi i ngā inenga tapa ki te whiriwhiri i te paenga me te horahanga o te tapawhā hāngai, me te rōrahi o te poro tapawhā hāngai;
  - ka tuhi, ka whakamārama, ka whakamahi hoki i ngā momo wātaka me ngā mahere;
  - ka mārama ki te whaitakenga o tētahi inenga.

#### Te Hanga

2. Ka tautohu, ka whakamārama i ngā tikanga āhuahanga o ngā rōpū āhua ahu-2 me ngā rōpū āhua ahu-3.
3. Ka tūhono i te āhua ahu-3 me tōna hoahoa ahu-2.
4. Ka tuhi raumata hei hanga matarau.

### Te Tauanga

#### Te Tūhuratanga Tauanga

1. Ka whai i ngā tikanga mō te tūhuratanga tauanga e whai wāhi mai ana te raraunga whakarōpū matatini, te raraunga ine, me te raraunga houanga:
  - ka whakatakoto pātai, tāpaetanga kōrero rānei;
  - ka whakatau i ngā taurangi hei ine;
  - ka whakatau i te tukanga kohikohi raraunga;
  - ka kohikohi raraunga;
  - ka wehewehe raraunga;
  - ka hanga whakaari raraunga e whaitake ana;
  - ka whakatairite i te āhua o ngā tuari raraunga (ngā wēanga me te hora o ngā raraunga);
  - ka whakaputa kōrero mō te pātai i tūhuratia;
  - ka mārama ki ngā tikanga matatika e hāngai ana;
2. Ka mārama ki te tikanga o ngā wēanga me te whakamahinga o ngā wēanga.
3. Ka whakamārama, ka arotake i te whaihua o ngā momo whakaari raraunga, ka whakaputa kōrero mō ngā taurangitanga e kitea mai ana.



## Te Tau me te Taurangi

### Ngā Rautaki Tau

5. Ka kōwhiri, ka whakamārama i te rautaki e tino whaihua ana hei whakaoti rapanga e whai wāhi mai ana te tauoti, te hautau, te tau ā-ira, te ōrau, te ōwehenga, te tau tōpū me te taupū māmā:
  - rautaki tatau;
  - rautaki tāpiripiri;
  - rautaki whakarea;
  - rautaki pānga riterite māmā.
6. Ka mārama ki te whaitakenga o te otinga o tētahi rapanga.

### Te Taurira me te Pānga

7. Ka mōhio ki ngā momo wāwāhitanga whakarea o tētahi tau.
8. Ka whakaatu pānga rārangi:
  - mā te whārite whai taurangi (ka whakaoti hoki i te whārite);
  - mā te ture;
  - mā te kauwhata.

## Te Ine me te Āhuahanga

### Te Wāhi me te Ahunga

5. Ka whakaatu, ka whakamārama, ka whakamahi i te wāhi noho (taunga) o tētahi mea, me te ahunga:
  - ngā tōpito;
  - ngā koki o te kāpehu;
  - ngā āhuatanga o te taiao;
  - te tukutuku (takirua raupapa);
  - te mahere.

### Te Panoni

6. Ka tautohu, ka whakamārama, ka whakamahi i te hangarite o tētahi āhua ahu-2, āhua ahu-3.
7. Ka tautohu, ka whakamārama, ka whakamahi i ngā āhuatanga pūmau o ngā panoni.

## Te Tauanga

### Te Tūponotanga

4. Ka tūhura i ngā pūahua tūponotanga:
  - ka whakatairite i te tuari o ngā putanga whakamātau me ngā matapaenga;
  - ka mārama ki ngā putanga katoa e taea ana;
  - ka mārama ki te taurangitanga o ngā putanga kāore e tika ana;
  - ka whakamahi hautanga ki te whakaatu tūponotanga.



## Te Reo Matatini o te Pāngarau

Ka whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro, ka āta wānanga te ākonga i āna mahi pāngarau, mā te kupu (ā-waha, ā-tuhi), mā te tohu, me ngā momo whakaahuhanga e hāngai ana. He mea nui tēnei hei tautoko i te whakatutukitanga o ngā whāinga paetae e whai ake nei, e pakari anō ai te whakaaro arorau, te whakaaro arohaehae, te whakaaro whaitake me te auahatanga o te ākonga e hāngai ana ki tēnei taumata.

## Te Whakamahinga o te Pāngarau

Ka mārama te ākonga, ka arohaehae hoki ia i ngā tini whakamahinga o te pāngarau e hāngai ana ki tōna hapori. Me kākahu anō ngā whāinga paetae ki ngā momo horopaki maha o te ao whānui.

### Te Tau me te Taurangi

#### Te Mātauranga Tau

1. Ka mōhio ki ngā tikanga o te taupū me te tānga ngahuru.

#### Ngā Rautaki Tau

2. Ka kōwhiri, ka whakamārama i te rautaki e tino whaihua ana hei whakaoti rapanga e whai wāhi mai ana te tau tōpū, te hautau, te tau ā-ira, te ōrau, te ōwehenga, te pāpātanga, me te taupū:
  - rautaki tatau;
  - rautaki tāpiripiri;
  - rautaki whakarea;
  - rautaki pānga riterite.
3. Ka whiriwhiri, ka whakamahi tauwehe pātahi, taurea pātahi hoki.
4. Ka mārama ki te whaitakenga o te otinga o tētahi rapanga.

#### Te Taura me te Pānga

5. Ka tuhi whārite rārangi ki te whakatauirā pūāhua whaitake, ka whakaoti hoki i te whārite.
6. Ka whakawhānui i ngā tikanga o roto i ngā rautaki tau hei tūāpapa mō ngā tikanga taurangi.
7. Ka whakaatu i te ōritenga o ngā ture e hāngai ana ki tētahi pānga rārangi kotahi.

### Te Ine me te Āhuahanga

#### Te Ine

1. Ka whakaoti rapanga whaitake:
  - ka kōwhiri, ka whakamahi i ngā waeine, ngā taputapu me ngā āwhata e hāngai ana mō te roa, te horahanga, te rōrahi (kitanga), te papatipu (taumaha), te paemahana, te koki me te wā;
  - ka whakawhitiwhiti waeine.
2. Ka whakaputa, ka whakamahi hoki i ngā ture hei tātai i te paenga me te horahanga o tētahi taparau.
3. Ka whakaputa, ka whakamahi hoki i ngā ture hei tātai i te rōrahi o tētahi poro.
4. Ka mārama ki te whaitakenga o tētahi inenga.

#### Te Hanga

5. Ka whakaputa, ka whakamahi i ngā tikanga koki o te rārangi pūtahi, te rārangi whakarara me ngā taparau.
6. Ka whakamahi taputapu ki te waihanga taparau māmā.
7. Ka tuhi raumata tōtika hei hanga matarau māmā.
8. Ka tuhi i ngā momo hoahoa hei whakaatu āhua ahu-3.

### Te Tauanga

#### Te Tūhuratanga Tauanga

1. Ka whai i ngā tikanga mō te tūhuratanga tauanga ki te whakamahere, ki te whakatutuki tirohanga tauanga, whakamātau tauanga hoki:
  - ka whakatakoto pātai, tāpaetanga kōrero rānei;
  - ka whakatau i ngā taurangi hei ine me ngā waeine e hāngai ana;
  - ka whakatau i te tukanga kohikohi raraunga;
  - ka kohikohi raraunga;
  - ka wehewehe raraunga;
  - ka āta whakaaro ki ngā take e taurangi ai ngā raraunga;
  - ka kōwhiri i ngā whakaari raraunga e whaitake ana, me te wehewehe anō i ngā raraunga e kitea ai ngā taura, ngā ia, ngā pānga me ngā taurangitanga o ngā raraunga whakarōpū matatini;
  - ka whakatairite i ngā tīpako me te hono anō o ngā tīpako ki ngā taupori, mā te whakamahi i ngā inenga wēanga me te hora o ngā raraunga;
  - ka whakaputa pūrongo mō te pātai i tūhuratia;
  - ka mārama ki ngā tikanga matatika e hāngai ana.



## Te Tau me te Taurangi

8. Ka rāwekeweke kīanga i runga i ngā tikanga taurangi.
9. Ka whakaatu pānga rārangi, pānga pūrua, pānga taupū ki te kauwhata hei whakatauiria i tētahi pūāhua whaitake.

## Te Ine me te Āhuahanga

9. Ka whakamahi ōwehenga pākoki me te ture a Pythagoras ki te whakaoti rapanga e whai wāhi mai ana te tapatoru hāngai.

### Te Wāhi me te Ahunga

10. Ka waihanga, ka whakamārama huanui māmā.
11. Ka tuhi, ka whakamārama taunga, rārangi hoki ki tētahi papa tukutuku, mā te whakamahi i:
  - ngā momo āwhata;
  - ngā tōpito;
  - ngā inenga koki o te kāpehu;
  - ngā momo mahere.

### Te Panoni

12. Ka tautohu, ka whakamahi, ka whakamārama i ngā momo panoni me ngā āhuatanga pūmau.

## Te Tauanga

2. Ka arotake i ngā tukanga tauanga o tētahi tūhuratanga:
  - te tukanga whai tīpako;
  - te whiriwhiri i ngā inenga wēanga me te hora o ngā raraunga;
  - te tika o ngā kōrero ka puta i te tūhuratanga.

### Te Tūponotanga

3. Ka tūhura pūāhua tūponotanga papa-tahi, papa-maha hoki:
  - ka whakamahi hautau, ōwehenga hoki ki te matapae, ki te whakamārama i ngā tuari raraunga ka puta i tētahi whakamātau tūponotanga;
  - ka whakatau i te whaitakenga o te taurangitanga e kitea mai ana i ngā raraunga o tētahi whakamātau tūponotanga.



## Te Reo Matatini o te Pāngarau

Ka whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro, ka āta wānanga te ākonga i āna mahi pāngarau, mā te kupu (ā-waha, ā-tuhi), mā te tohu, me ngā momo whakaahuahanga e hāngai ana. He mea nui tēnei hei tautoko i te whakatutukitanga o ngā whāinga paetae e whai ake nei, e pakari anō ai te whakaaro arorau, te whakaaro arohaehae, te whakaaro whaitake me te auhatanga o te ākonga e hāngai ana ki tēnei taumata.

## Te Whakamahinga o te Pāngarau

Ka mārama te ākonga, ka arohaehae hoki ia i ngā tini whakamahinga o te pāngarau e hāngai ana ki tōna hapori. Me kākahu anō ngā whāinga paetae ki ngā momo horopaki maha o te ao whānui.

### Te Tau me te Taurangi

Ka whakaoti rapanga, ka whakatauirā pūāhua:

#### Te Mātauranga me ngā Rautaki Tau

1. Ka whakamahi pānga rārangi hāngai, pānga rārangi kōaro hoki.
2. Ka whakawhānui taupū, kia hāngai ki ngā tau tōpū me ngā hautau.
3. Ka whakamahi pāpātanga whakaputu o ia rā.
4. Ka whakamahi rautaki tau ki te whiriwhiri otinga tino whaihua.
5. Ka mārama ki te whaitakenga o te otinga o tētahi rapanga.

#### Te Whārite me te Kīanga

6. Ka tuhi, ka whakaoti whārite rārangi, tōrite rārangi, whārite pūrua, whārite taupū māmā, whārite tukutahi, kia rua ngā taurangi.

### Te Ine me te Āhuahanga

Ka whakaoti rapanga, ka whakatauirā pūāhua:

#### Te Ine

1. Ka whakatutuki inenga kia hāngai tonu te tōtika o te ine ki te horopaki.
2. Ka whakamahi i ngā hononga o ngā waeine o te pūnaha ngahuru, tae atu ki ngā hononga o ngā waeine mō ngā āhuatanga rerekē.
3. Ka whakamahi ture tātai hei whiriwhiri i te rōrahi o ngā momo poro, ngā koeko me ngā poi.

#### Te Hanga

4. Ka whakaputa, ka whakamahi i ngā tikanga koki o te porowhita.
5. Ka aro ki ngā āhua ōrite, ā, ka whakamahi whakaaro pānga riterite hei tātai i tētahi tapa.
6. Ka whakamahi ōwehenga pākoki me te ture a Pythagoras, i ngā pūāhua ahu-2, ahu-3 hoki.

### Te Tauanga

Ka whakaoti rapanga, ka whakatauirā pūāhua:

#### Te Tūhuratanga Tauanga

1. Ka whai i ngā tikanga mō te tūhuratanga tauanga ki te whakamahere, ki te whakatutuki tūhuratanga:
  - ka parahau i ngā taurangi me ngā waeine;
  - ka whakatau i ngā pūtakenga o te taurangitanga, pērā i te whakamahi tīpako matapōkere;
  - ka whakamahi whakaari tauanga matatini ki te tautohu, ki te whakawhiti whakaaro mō ngā āhuatanga horopaki, pērā i te ia, ngā hononga taurangi, me ngā taurangitanga o roto, o waenganui hoki i ngā tuari raraunga;
  - ka whakaputa hīkaro ōpaki mō te taupori, ka hua ake i ngā raraunga;
  - ka whakamahi whakaari raraunga me ngā waeine ki te parahau i ngā whakakitenga ka hua ake i te tūhuratanga;
  - ka mārama ki ngā tikanga matatika e hāngai ana.



## Te Tau me te Taurangi

### Te Pānga me te Taurira

7. Ka whakawhānui i ngā tikanga paheko tau, me ngā tikanga taupū.
8. Ka tūhono i te kauwhata, te tūtohi me te whārite ki ngā pānga rārangi, pānga pūrua, pānga taupū māmā e kitea mai ana i ngā taurira tau me ngā taurira mokowā.
9. Ka tūhono i te pāpātanga o te whiti ki te rōnaki o tētahi kauwhata.

## Te Ine me te Āhuahanga

### Te Wāhi me te Ahunga

7. Ka whakamahi papa taunga, mahere rānei ki te whakaatu taunga pātahi me ngā rohe o roto i ētahi huanui e rua, nui ake rānei.

### Te Panoni

8. Ka whakatairite, ka whakamahi i ngā panoni papa-tahi, papa-maha hoki.
9. Ka tātari taurira hangarite mā te whakaatu i ngā panoni i hangaia ai aua taurira.

## Te Tauanga

### Te Aroā Tauanga

2. Ka arohaehae i ngā pārongo tauanga ka puta i ngā pāhotanga, mā te tūhono i ngā whakaari raraunga, ngā tauanga, ngā tukanga me ngā tūponotanga ki ngā pārongo.

### Te Tūponotanga

3. Ka tūhura pūāhua tūponotanga:
  - ka whakatairite i ngā tuari tātai me ngā tuari whakamātau, me te aro anō ki te rahi o te tīpako;
  - ka tātai tūponotanga i ngā pūāhua e whai wāhi mai ana te raraunga motumotu.

## Te Reo Matatini o te Pāngarau

Ka whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro, ka āta wānanga te ākonga i āna mahi pāngarau, mā te kupu (ā-waha, ā-tuhi), mā te tohu, me ngā momo whakaahuahanga e hāngai ana. He mea nui tēnei hei tautoko i te whakatutukitanga o ngā whāinga paetae e whai ake nei, e pakari anō ai te whakaaro arorau, te whakaaro arohaehae, te whakaaro whaitake me te auahatanga o te ākonga e hāngai ana ki tēnei taumata.

## Te Whakamahinga o te Pāngarau

Ka mārama te ākonga, ka arohaehae, ka arotake hoki ia i te takenga mai o te mātauranga pāngarau me ngā tini whakamahinga o te pāngarau. Me kākahu anō ngā whāinga paetae ki ngā momo horopaki maha o te ao whānui.

### Te Taurangi me te Tuanaki

Ka whakaoti rapanga, ka whakatauiria pūāhua:

#### Te Taurangi me te Pānga

1. Ka whakamahi tikanga āhuahanga taunga e whai wāhi mai ana te pūwāhi, te rārangi torotika me te kōpiko.
2. Ka tūhura i ngā kauwhata pānga rārangi, kauwhata pānga rārangi-kore hoki, ā, ka tūhono i te hanga o te pānga ki te āhua o te kauwhata.
3. Ka whakamahi i ngā tapeke raupapa tāpiri, me ngā tapeke raupapa whakarea hoki.
4. Ka whakamahi pānga pākoki i ngā pūāhua ahu-2, ahu-3 hoki, tae atu ki te ture aho me te ture whenu.
5. Ka kōwhiri i ngā rauara e hāngai ana hei kimi i te otinga tino whaihua.

#### Te Whārite me te Kīanga

6. Ka rāwekeweke i ngā kīanga taurangi hautanga, taupūtanga, taupūtanga kōaro hoki.
7. Ka tuhi, ka whakamahi whārite rārangi, whārite pūrua, whārite pākoki māmā hoki.
8. Ka tuhi, ka whakamahi whārite tukutahi, he rārangi-kore tētahi o ngā whārite.

#### Te Tuanaki

9. Ka tūhura kauwhata pānga me ngā pānga rōnaki e hāngai ana, ā, ka whakamārama i te hononga o tētahi ki tētahi.
10. Ka whakamahi tikanga kimi pārōnaki, kimi pārōnaki-kōaro hoki e whai wāhi mai ana te pūrau.

### Te Tauanga

Ka whakaoti rapanga, ka whakatauiria pūāhua:

#### Te Tūhuratanga Tauanga

1. Ka whai i ngā tikanga mō te tūhuratanga tauanga:
  - ka whakahaere tirohanga tauanga mā te whakamahi tikanga tīpako matapōkere, tikanga whakamātau rānei, ka whakamahi rānei i ngā huinga raraunga kua oti kē te kohi mai;
  - ka arotake i te āhua o te ine i ngā taurangi, te tukanganga whai tīpako, tukanganga kohikohi raraunga hoki;
  - ka whakamahi mōhiotanga e pā ana ki te horopaki o te tūhuratanga, te tātaritanga raraunga torotoro me te hīkaro tauanga;
  - ka mārama ki ngā tikanga matatika e hāngai ana.
2. Ka whakaputa hīkaro, mai i ngā tirohanga tauanga me ngā whakamātau:
  - ka whakaputa matapae ōpaki, ka whakaoti marohi rāroto, marohi rāwaho hoki;
  - ka whakamahi tauanga māmā ki te whakatauta i ngā tawhā taupori;
  - ka mārama ki te pānga o te rahi o te tīpako ki te tōtika, te taurangitanga rānei o tētahi whakatauta tata.

#### Te Aroā Tauanga

3. Ka arotake i ngā pūrongo tauanga:
  - ka mārama ki te tūponotanga, me te tūponotanga whai pānga o ngā whakapae;
  - ka tautohu i ngā hapa tīpako me ngā hapa kē atu ka hua mai i ngā rangahau me ngā pōti.

#### Te Tūponotanga

4. Ka tūhura i ngā pūāhua tūponotanga:
  - ka whakatairite i ngā tuari tātai (pērā i te tuari hangarite) me ngā tuari whakamātau;
  - ka tātai tūponotanga mā te whakamahi tūtohi ararua, hoahoa rākau, whaihanga, me te hangarau e hāngai ana.



## Te Reo Matatini o te Pāngarau

Ka whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro, ka āta wānanga te ākonga i āna mahi pāngarau, mā te kupu (ā-waha, ā-tuhi), mā te tohu, me ngā momo whakaahuahanga e hāngai ana. He mea nui tēnei hei tautoko i te whakatutukitanga o ngā whāinga paetae e whai ake nei, e pakari anō ai te whakaaro arorau, te whakaaro arohaehae, te whakaaro whaitake me te auahatanga o te ākonga e hāngai ana ki tēnei taumata.

## Te Whakamahinga o te Pāngarau

Ka mārama te ākonga, ka arohaehae, ka arotake hoki ia i te takenga mai o te mātauranga pāngarau me ngā tini whakamahinga o te pāngarau. Me kākahu anō ngā whāinga paetae ki ngā momo horopaki maha o te ao whānui.

### Te Taurangi me te Tuanaki

Ka whakaoti rapanga, ka whakatauiria pūāhua:

#### Te Taurira me te Pānga

1. Ka whakamahi i ngā tikanga āhuahanga o te motunga koeko.
2. Ka tuhi, ka whakamārama i ngā kauwhata pānga me ngā kauwhata pānga kōaro, kauwhata pānga huri kōaro e hāngai ana.
3. Ka whakamahi whiriwhiringa raupapa, whiriwhiringa raupapa-kore hoki.
4. Ka whakamahi tikanga whakanoho rārangi kōpiko, tauira taupū kōaro, me ngā tikanga rorohiko mō te kauwhata rārangi.
5. Ka tuhi hoahoa rauara hei whiriwhiri i te otinga e tino whaihua ana, ka whakamārama hoki i ngā ara matua.

#### Te Whārite me te Kīanga

6. Ka rāwekeweke i ngā kīanga pākoki.
7. Ka tuhi, ka whakamahi whārite pākoki, whārite pūrau, me ētahi atu whārite rārangi-kore.
8. Ka tuhi, ka whakamahi pūnaha whārite tukutahi, ka whai wāhi mai kia toru ngā whārite rārangi, kia toru hoki ngā taurangi, ka whakamārama hoki i te otinga i runga i te āhua o te horopaki.
9. Ka rāwekeweke tau hiato hei whakaoti whārite, ā, ka whakaatu anō ki te kauwhata.

### Te Tauanga

Ka whakaoti rapanga, ka whakatauiria pūāhua:

#### Te Tūhuratanga Tauanga

1. Ka whai i ngā tikanga mō te tūhuratanga tauanga:
  - ka whakahaere tirohanga tauanga, whakamātau tauanga rānei, mā te whakamahi tikanga whakamahere whakamātau tauanga, ka whakamahi rānei i ngā huinga raraunga kua oti kē te kohi mai;
  - ka whiriwhiri, ka whakamahi, ka arotake i ngā tauira tauanga e whaihua ana ki te whakatakoto matapae, ki te kimi whakamārama (pērā i te ine hononga taurangi rārangi mō te raraunga matarua, me te tauira tāpiripiri mō te raraunga houanga);
  - ka whakamahi mōhiotanga ki te horopaki o te tūhuratanga, ka whakamahi tikanga tātari raraunga hōpara, ka whakamahi tikanga hīkaro tauanga;
  - ka whakamārama i ngā whakakitenga, ka arotake i ngā wāhanga katoa o te tūhuratanga;
  - ka mārama ki ngā tikanga matatika e hāngai ana.
2. Ka whakaputa hīkaro, mai i ngā tirohanga tauanga me ngā whakamātau:
  - ka whiriwhiri i ngā whakataunga tata me ngā whaitua taupono mō te toharite, te hautanga me te rerekētanga;
  - ka whakamahi tikanga pērā i te tīpako anō, me te whakamatapōkere, ki te aromatawai i te whaitakenga o te taunakitanga.



## Te Taurangi me te Tuanaki

### Te Tuanaki

10. Ka tautohu i ngā aruarunga me ngā tepe o tētahi pānga.
11. Ka whiriwhiri, ka whakamahi i ngā tikanga maha mō te kimi pārōnaki, te kimi pāwhaitua, te kimi pārōnaki kōaro o tētahi pānga, pērā i te tikanga tātari me te tikanga tau.
12. Ka hanga whārite pārōnaki, ka whakamārama hoki i ngā otinga.

## Te Tauanga

### Te Aroā Tauanga

3. Ka arotake i te whānuitanga o ngā momo pūrongo pāpāho, pērā i ngā pōtitanga, ngā tirohanga tauanga, ngā whakamātau me ngā rangahautanga mātakitaki;
  - ka arohaehae i ngā kōrero mō te takenga mai o tētahi pānga;
  - ka whakamārama i ngā pae hapa.

### Te Tūponotanga

4. Ka tūhura i ngā pūāhua tūponotanga:
  - ka tātari i te tūponotanga o ngā pāpono wehe kē, pāpono paheko me ngā pāpono whakawhirinaki;
  - ka tātari, ka whakamārama i ngā uara me ngā ine mahora o ngā taurangi motumotu matapōkere;
  - ka whakamahi i ngā momo tuari pērā i te tuari Poisson, te tuari huarua me te tuari hangarite.



# PĀNGARAU



ahu-2	<i>2-dimensional</i>
ahu-3	<i>3-dimensional</i>
āhuatanga pūmau	<i>invariant property</i>
aro whānui	<i>standard (e.g. unit of measurement)</i>
arohaehae	<i>critique</i>
aronga kē	<i>non-standard (e.g. unit of measurement)</i>
aruarunga	<i>discontinuity</i>
auahatanga	<i>creativity</i>
hau-tahi	<i>unit fraction</i>
hīkaro	<i>inference</i>
hoahoa rākau	<i>tree diagram</i>
huānga	<i>element (member of a set)</i>
huanui	<i>locus</i>
huinga raraunga	<i>data set</i>
ia	<i>trend</i>
ine hononga taurangi rārangi	<i>linear regression</i>
ine mahora	<i>standard deviation</i>
kīanga taurangi	<i>algebraic expression</i>
marohi rāroto	<i>interpolation</i>
marohi rāwaho	<i>extrapolation</i>
mātāoroko	<i>object (before transformation)</i>
matapae	<i>predict</i>
matatika	<i>ethics</i>
mātātuhi	<i>image (of an object following transformation)</i>
motunga koeko	<i>conic section</i>
ōwehenga pākoki	<i>trigonometric ratio</i>
pae hapa	<i>margins of error</i>
pānga huri kōaro	<i>reciprocal function</i>
pānga kōaro	<i>inverse function</i>
pānga pākoki	<i>trigonometric function</i>
pānga pūrua	<i>quadratic function</i>

pānga rārangi	<i>linear relationship</i>	rauara	<i>network</i>
pānga rārangi hāngai	<i>direct linear relationship</i>	raumata	<i>net (of a solid shape)</i>
pānga rārangi kōaro	<i>inverse linear relationship</i>	raupapa tatauranga	<i>counting sequence</i>
pānga rārangi-kore	<i>non-linear function</i>	rautaki āhuahanga	<i>geometrical strategy</i>
pānga rōnaki	<i>gradient function</i>	rautaki pānga riterite	<i>proportional strategy</i>
pānga taupū	<i>exponential function</i>	rautaki tāpiripiri	<i>additive strategy</i>
panoni	<i>transformation</i>	rautaki tatau	<i>counting strategy</i>
papa taunga	<i>coordinate plain</i>	rautaki taurangi	<i>algebraic strategy</i>
papa-maha	<i>multi-level</i>	rautaki tohatoha ōrite	<i>equal sharing strategy</i>
papa-tahi	<i>single-level</i>	rautaki wāwāhi tau	<i>additive partitioning strategy</i>
pāpātanga o te whiti	<i>rate of change</i>	tāpiripiri	
pāpātanga whakaputu	<i>compound rate</i>	rautaki whakarea	<i>multiplicative strategy</i>
pāpono paheko	<i>combined event</i>	rautaki whakarōpū	<i>grouping strategy</i>
pāpono wehe kē	<i>independent event</i>	rāwekeweke	<i>manipulate (an equation)</i>
pāpono whakawhirinaki	<i>conditional event</i>	rima me ngā tauhono	<i>groupings with five</i>
parahau	<i>justify</i>	rōnaki	<i>gradient, slope</i>
pārōnaki	<i>differentiation</i>	takirua raupapa	<i>ordered pair</i>
pārōnaki kōaro	<i>anti-differentiation</i>	tāpaetanga kōrero	<i>assertion</i>
pārongo tauanga	<i>statistical information</i>	tapeke raupapa tāpiri	<i>arithmetic series</i>
pāwhaitua	<i>integration</i>	tapeke raupapa whakarea	<i>geometric series</i>
pūāhua	<i>situation</i>	tātaritanga raraunga	<i>exploratory data analysis</i>
pūnaha ngahuru	<i>metric system</i>	torotoro	
pūrau	<i>polynomial</i>	tau hiato	<i>complex number</i>
putanga	<i>outcome</i>	tau toitū	<i>prime number</i>
rahinga	<i>quantity</i>	tau tōpū	<i>integer</i>
rārangi pūtahi	<i>intersecting lines</i>	tauhono o te tekau	<i>additive groupings within ten</i>
rārangi whakarara	<i>parallel lines</i>	tauirā raupapa	<i>sequential pattern</i>
raraunga houanga	<i>time series data</i>	tauirā tāruarua	<i>repeating pattern</i>
raraunga matarua	<i>bi-variate data</i>	tauirā taupū kōaro	<i>log modelling</i>
raraunga motumotu	<i>discrete data</i>	taupori	<i>population</i>
raraunga whakarōpū	<i>category data</i>	taupū	<i>exponent</i>
raraunga whakarōpū matatini	<i>multi-variate category data</i>	taurangi	<i>variable, algebra</i>
		taurangi motumotu	<i>discrete random variable</i>
		matapōkere	

# PĀNGARAU

# KUPU TAKA

taurangitanga	<i>variation</i>	tūtohi ararua	<i>two-way table</i>
taurea	<i>multiple</i>	wāwāhi	<i>partition</i>
tauwehe	<i>factor</i>	wēanga	<i>measure of central tendency</i>
tawhā	<i>parameter</i>	wehe kētanga	<i>independence</i>
tekau me ngā tauhono	<i>groupings with ten</i>	wehewehe raraunga	<i>sort data</i>
tepe (o te tika)	<i>limit (of accuracy)</i>	whaihanga	<i>simulation</i>
tikanga āhuahanga taunga	<i>co-ordinate geometry</i>	whaitakenga	<i>reasonableness</i>
tikanga rorohiko mō te kauwhata rārangi	<i>linear programming technique</i>	whaitua taupono	<i>confidence interval</i>
tikanga whakanoho rārangi kōpiko	<i>curve fitting technique</i>	whakaahuahanga	<i>representation</i>
tīpako	<i>sample, select</i>	whakaari raraunga	<i>data display</i>
tīpako matapōkere	<i>random sample</i>	whakaaro arohaehae	<i>critical thinking</i>
tirohanga	<i>perspective</i>	whakaaro arorau	<i>logical thinking</i>
tōrite rārangi	<i>linear inequation</i>	whakaaro pānga riterite	<i>proportional reasoning</i>
tuanaki	<i>calculus</i>	whakaaro whaitake	<i>deductive thinking</i>
tuari hangarite	<i>normal distribution</i>	whakaawhiwhi	<i>round (a number)</i>
tuari huarua	<i>binomial distribution</i>	whārite pārōnaki	<i>differential equation</i>
tuari raraunga	<i>data distribution</i>	whārite pūrau	<i>polynomial equation</i>
tuari tātai	<i>theoretical distribution</i>	whārite rārangi	<i>linear equation</i>
tuari whakamātau	<i>experimental distribution</i>	whārite rārangi-kore	<i>non-linear equation</i>
tūhuratanga tauanga	<i>statistical investigation</i>	whārite taupū	<i>exponential equation</i>
tukanga kohikohi raraunga	<i>data collection method</i>	whārite tukutahi	<i>simultaneous equation</i>
tukanga whai tīpako	<i>sampling method</i>	whārite whai taurangi	<i>algebraic equation</i>
tukutuku	<i>grid</i>	whiriwhiringa raupapa	<i>permutation</i>
ture aho	<i>sine rule</i>	whiriwhiringa raupapa-kore	<i>combination</i>
ture whenu	<i>cosine rule</i>		

# Hauora



*E tipu ai te pakiaka tangata, me whakatō he purapura wairua.  
Whakahaukūtia te whenua ki te waiora pūmau kia puta ai ko te Hauora.*

Ko te oranga te tino pūmanawa i homai ki a tāua ki te tangata. Kei a tāua te tino kawenga ki te manaaki, ki te tiaki i tēnei taonga tuku iho.

Ko ā tātou tamariki ngā rangatira mō āpōpō. Mā te tiaki, mā te poipoi ka puta te oranga ki a tātou katoa.

## Te Whaitake o te Ako i te Hauora

Ko tā tēnei wāhanga ako, he whakatuwhera i ngā kūaha o te hauora ki te ākonga kia mātau ia ki te oranga tangata, oranga wairua, oranga hinengaro, oranga tinana, oranga ngākau, tae noa ki te oranga taiao. Ka whai wāhi te ākonga ki te whakaahua, ki te whakamārama, ki te whakamātau me te arotake i ngā āhuetanga huhua o te hauora.

## Te Hanga o tēnei Wāhanga Ako

Ko ngā whenu, he anga hei whakarite, hei whakawhāiti i ngā kaupapa o te wāhanga ako. E whā ngā whenu o tēnei wāhanga ako, o te hauora. Arā, ko te:

### Waiora

*Piki mai. Kake mai.  
Homai te waiora ki ahau.*

Ka tūhura, ka whakamārama te ākonga i ngā āhuetanga o ngā momo kai hei oranga ā-tinana, ā-hinengaro, ā-wairua hoki. Ka whakaahua, ka whakaaroaro, ka tātari hoki te ākonga i ngā āhuetanga o te tupuranga me te haumarutanga hei takapau mō tōna hīkoi i te ao.

### Koiri

*Ko te piko o te māhuri,  
tērā te tupu o te rākau.*

Ka whakawhanake, ka whakamahi te ākonga i ōna pūkenga neke, pūkenga koiri, mōhiotanga hoki hei whakapakari i te tinana, hei whakakoakoa i te ngākau, hei whakaauaha i te wairua.

### Taiao

*Hāhā te whenua, hāhā te tangata.*

Ka whakawhiti kōrero, ka whakaputa whakaaro te ākonga mō ngā āhuetanga taiao, i te hononga tangata ki a Ranginui rāua ko Papatūānuku, ā, i tō rāua hononga hoki ki te tangata. Ka whai whakaaro hoki te ākonga mō te pāhekohekotanga o te tangata ki te taiao hei hāpai i te noho tahi ki a Papatūānuku, me te noho tahi ki ētahi atu.

### Tangata

*He taura taonga e motu,  
he taura tangata e kore e motu.*

Ka whakaatu, ka tātari te ākonga i tōna kāwai here ki ētahi atu hei aka matua mō tōna noho i te mata o te whenua.

Kei ia whenu ōna kaupapa hei whakaahua, hei whakamārama i ngā tino āhuetanga o aua whenu. Ko ngā whāinga paetae i takea mai i ēnei kaupapa. Ahakoa te noho motuhake o tēnā whenu, o tēnā whenu me ngā kaupapa, kei te hono tonu ki ērā atu whenu, ki ērā atu kaupapa o tēnei wāhanga ako.

Hei tāwharau i ēnei whenu, ko te wairua, ko ngā tikanga, ko te reo, ko ngā uara me ngā waiaro. E tika ana kia kōtuituia ēnei āhuetanga ki ngā whenu katoa. Ko te reo me ngā tikanga hei whakanikoniko i ngā whakaaro o te ākonga, hei ārahi i tana mahi. Waihoki, ko te wairua, ko ngā uara me ngā waiaro hei tautoko, hei whakaū i tā te Māori titiro ki te ao

# HAUORA

## Hauora

Kei raro nei te mahere o tēnei wāhanga ako, o te hauora.



Kia kōtuituia ēnei āhuatanga ki ngā whenu katoa.

**TE WAIRUA  
NGĀ TIKANGA  
TE REO  
NGĀ UARA ME NGĀ WAIARO**

Waiora	Koiri	Taiao	Tangata
<p><b>Tupuranga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka whakawhiti kōrero, ka whakaputa kare ā-roto hoki e pā ana ki tōna tupu, pērā i te kai, te tiaki i a ia anō me te whai haere i ngā tikanga o te kāinga.</li> </ol> <p><b>Haumarutanga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka whakaahua mai i ngā tikanga māmā o te noho haumaruru me ngā pūnaha haumaruru.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Akoranga Koiri</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka whakawhanake i ngā nekehanga huhua.</li> </ol> <p><b>Whakamahinga Pūkenga Koiri</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka whai wāhi atu ki ngā momo tākaro, ngā momo nekehanga, ngā mahi koiri hoki, me te tautohu he aha i pārekareka ai ki a ia.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Hononga ki a Ranginui rāua ko Papatūānuku</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka tautohu, ka whakaahua i ētahi whakapapa o te taiao me ngā hononga o te tangata ki te taiao, hei oranga mōna.</li> </ol> <p><b>Hononga ki ētahi atu Taiao</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka whakawhiti kōrero e pā ana ki ngā taiao e taunga ana ia.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Whanaungatanga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka whakaahua i tana whai wāhi atu ki te whānau me ētahi atu horopaki.</li> </ol> <p><b>Huatau o te Whanaungatanga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka whakatinana i te aroha, i te manaaki me te awahi i te tangata, kia pūmau ai ngā taiao hei wāhi pārekareka mō te katoa.</li> </ol>



Kia kōtuituia ēnei āhuetanga ki ngā whenu katoa.

**TE WAIRUA  
NGĀ TIKANGA  
TE REO  
NGĀ UARA ME NGĀ WAIARO**

Waiora	Koiri	Taiao	Tangata
<p><b>Kai</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka whakaputa whakaaro mō ngā momo kai, me te pānga o aua kai ki tōna tupu.</li> </ol> <p><b>Tupuranga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka tautohu, ka whakapuaki i ōna whakaaro, i ōna hiahia e pā ana ki tōna tupu.</li> </ol> <p><b>Haumarutanga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Ka whakaatu i ngā tikanga o te noho haumaruru me ngā pūnaha haumaruru i roto i ngā horopaki huhua.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Akoranga Koiri</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka whakapakari i tana mōhio ki te tūhono i ētahi pūkenga koiri e tutuki pai ai ētahi raupapa koiri.</li> </ol> <p><b>Whakamahinga Pūkenga Koiri</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka whai tonu i ngā momo tākaro, mahi koiri hoki e pārekareka ana ki a ia, me te whakaahua i ngā hua oranga.</li> <li>3. Ka whakawhanake i ngā whakaaro, i ngā tikanga me ngā ture tōtika o āna mahi tākaro.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Hononga ki a Ranginui rāua ko Papatūānuku</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka whakawhiti kōrero e pā ana ki te hiranga o Papatūānuku rāua ko Ranginui ki te oranga tangata.</li> </ol> <p><b>Hononga ki ētahi atu Taiao</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka tautohu, ka whakaputa whakaaro mō ngā āhuetanga pārekareka o ngā taiao e taunga ana ia.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Whanaungatanga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka whakaatu i ngā huarahi hei whai, hei whakaū, hei whakakaha ake i ngā hononga i waenganui i te tokorua, i te rōpū, i ngā horopaki huhua hoki.</li> </ol> <p><b>Huatau o te Whanaungatanga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka torotoro i ngā uara, ngā waiaro me ngā haepapa a te tangata hei whakapiki i te oranga o te whānau, te hapū me te iwi.</li> </ol>



## Kai

1. Ka torotoro i ngā tikanga e pā ana ki te kai, pērā i te manaaki manuhiri, i ngā horopaki e taunga ana ia.

## Tupuranga

2. Ka tautohu i ngā āhuatanga e rerekē ai tōna tupu.
3. Ka whakaahua i ōna kare ā-roto, i ōna whakaponu, tae atu ki ō ētahi atu, e mōhio ai ia ki ōna ake pūkenga.

## Haumarutanga

4. Ka tautohu, ka whakamahi i ngā tikanga haumaruru o roto i te kura, kia whaihua ēnei tikanga.

## Akoranga koiri

1. Ka whakaatu i tōna hihiri ki te ako i ētahi raupapa neke, i ētahi raupapa koiri āhua uua i ētahi horopaki huhua.
2. Ka whakawhānui i ngā pūmanawa koiri e pārekareka ana ki a ia, me te whakaaroaro ki ngā painga o aua mahi mōna.

## Whakamahinga Pūkenga Koiri

3. Ka whai wāhi atu ki ngā tākaro whakataetae, tākaro pāhekoheko, me te whakaahua i ngā whanonga o te tangata ngākaunui ki te whakataetae.

## Hononga ki a Ranginui rāua ko Papatūānuku

1. Ka whakaatu me pēhea te tiaki i ngā rawa o te taiao, kia pūmau ai te taiao hei puna rongoā, hei puna oranga whānui.

## Hononga ki ētahi atu Taiao

2. Ka whakaputa whakaaro mō te herenga o te tangata ki tōna taiao, te taiao hoki ki te tangata, me te whakarite rautaki kia pārekareka tonu ai ngā taiao mōna ake, mō te tangata hoki.

## Whanaungatanga

1. Ka whakataurite i te rerekē haere o ngā huarahi whakaū i ngā hononga tāngata, me ngā huarahi whakataki.

## Huatau o te Whanaungatanga

2. Ka torotoro i ngā aupēhi e whakararu ana i a ia, me te whakaahua i ētahi rautaki māmā hei kaupare i ēnei āhuatanga.
3. Ka whai wāhi atu ki ētahi huihuinga tāngata, ki ētahi taiopenga tāngata, me te whakamārama ka pēhea te whakakaha ake a ēnei tūmomo hui i te oranga o te hapori.



Kia kōtuituia ēnei āhuatanga ki ngā whenu katoa.

## TE WAIRUA NGĀ TIKANGA TE REO NGĀ UARA ME NGĀ WAIARO

Waiora	Koiri	Taiao	Tangata
<p><b>Kai</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka whakawhiti whakaaro mō ngā momo kai, mō te oranga ā-wairua, ā-hinengaro, ā-tinana.</li> </ol> <p><b>Tupuranga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka whakaahua i ngā āhuatanga o te pūhuruhurutanga kia tau pai ai tōna wairua ki te rerekē haere o tōna tinana me ō ētahi atu.</li> <li>3. Ka tautohu i ngā pānga mai o ngā karere o te hapori, me te whakaahua i ngā uara tōtika mō te oranga o te tangata.</li> </ol> <p><b>Haumarutanga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Ka kimi, ka whakamahi mōhiohio i ngā horopaki huhua hei whakataū, hei whakatinana i ngā kōwhiringa haumarū.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Akoranga Koiri</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka māia te tū i te wā e whakaatu ana i ētahi raupapa neke i ngā horopaki huhua.</li> <li>2. Ka whakaatu i tōna hiahia ki te kawē i ngā take me ngā rautaki koiri, ki te whakawhānui atu i ōna āheinga koiri.</li> </ol> <p><b>Whakamahinga Pūkenga Koiri</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Ka whai wāhi atu me te whakaputa māramatanga ki ngā mahi ngātahi i roto i ngā mahi koiri, ā-iwi, ā-hapori hoki.</li> </ol> <p><b>Mātauranga Pūtaiao, Hangarau, Taiao me te Koiri</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Ka tūhura i te pānga o te pūtaiao, o te hangarau me te taiao ki ngā taputapu ka kōwhiria, ka whakamahia i ētahi horopaki maha.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Hononga ki a Ranginui rāua ko Papatūānuku</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka whakataurite i ngā ture, i ngā tikanga rānei o te ao Pākehā, o te ao Māori, o hea ake rānei, e pā ana ki te mahi a te tangata i roto i te taiao.</li> <li>2. Ka tūhura me pēhea e pai ake ai te āhua o te taiao kura me ētahi atu taiao.</li> <li>3. Ka tūhura i te pānga mai o te hapori whānui ki te noho ora o ngā hapori ākongā.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Whanaungatanga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka tautohu, ka whakamārama i te rerekē haere o ngā horopaki whanaungatanga me te pānga hoki ki ngā haepapa o ia tangata, kātahi ka whakaahua i ngā whakautu e tika ana.</li> </ol> <p><b>Huatau o te Whanaungatanga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka whakaatu i te huhua o ngā pūmanawa whakapuaki whakaaro i runga i te wairua whakawhena e tōtika ai te mahi ngātahi.</li> <li>3. Ka tautohu i ngā mahi whakatoihara me te tautoko i ētahi atu tāngata e rongō ana i ngā kino o tēnei mahi, kia tū tangata ai.</li> </ol>



Kia kōtuituia ēnei āhuratanga ki ngā whenu katoa.

**TE WAIRUA  
NGĀ TIKANGA  
TE REO  
NGĀ UARA ME NGĀ WAIARO**

Waiora	Koiri	Taiao	Tangata
<p><b>Kai</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka tūhura, ka whakaahua i ngā take kai e hāngai ana ki te ao o te taiohi.</li> </ol> <p><b>Tupuranga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka tūhono i ngā āhuratanga tukanga tupu o te taiohi, me te whakawhanake rautaki whaihua hei tiaki i a ia anō.</li> </ol> <p><b>Haumarutanga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Ka tūhura, ka whakamahi i ngā rautaki haumarua kia pai ai te noho ki tōna hapori.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Akoranga Koiri</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka whakamahi i ngā pūkenga koiri uua mā te whai haere i ētahi mātāpono koiri māmā.</li> <li>2. Ka whakapakari i ngā pūkenga me ngā waiaro tōtika i roto i ngā horopaki mātātaki.</li> </ol> <p><b>Whakamahinga Pūkenga Koiri</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Ka tūhura i ngā āhuratanga ā-iwi, ā-hapori hoki e pāpā ana ki te āheinga koiri o te tangata, me te whai wāhi atu ki ngā mahi koiri, akoranga koiri hoki.</li> </ol> <p><b>Mātauranga Pūtaiao, Hangarau, Taiao me te Koiri</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Ka whakamātau i te mātauranga taiao, pūtaiao me te hangarau hei hāpai, hei whakaawe i ngā akoranga koiri.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Hononga ki a Ranginui rāua ko Papatūānuku</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka whakawhiti whakaaro mō ngā haepapa me ngā motika a te tangata hei kaitiaki taiao.</li> <li>2. Ka tūhura i te tapu o ngā mea katoa o te taiao, tae atu ki te tangata.</li> </ol> <p><b>Hononga ki ētahi atu Taiao</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Ka tūhura i ngā kaupapa hāpai i te hauora o te tangata, me te akiaki i te tangata kia whakauru atu ki aua kaupapa.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Whanaungatanga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka tautohu i ngā take e hāngai ana ki ngā hononga tāngata i roto i ngā horopaki huhua, me te whakaahua i ngā kōwhiringa kia puta ai he hua pai.</li> </ol> <p><b>Huatau o te Whanaungatanga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka whakaatu i ōna pūmanawa, tikanga mahi ngātahi, hei whakatau kōwhiringa kia noho ora ai ia me ētahi atu.</li> <li>3. Ka rangahau i ngā hononga o ngā tikanga ā-whānau, ā-hapū, ā-iwi ki te oranga o te tangata.</li> </ol>



Kia kōtuituia ēnei āhuetanga ki ngā whenu katoa.

**TE WAIRUA  
NGĀ TIKANGA  
TE REO  
NGĀ UARA ME NGĀ WAIARO**

Waiora	Koiri	Taiao	Tangata
--------	-------	-------	---------

**Kai**

1. Ka tūhura, ka whakamārama i te pānga mai o ngā take kai e pāpā ana ki te hauora o te whānau, kōhungahunga mai, taiohi mai, pakeke mai.

**Tupuranga**

2. Ka tautohu, ka tūhura i ngā kōwhiringa e pā ana ki te whanaketanga o te taiohi, me te arotake i ngā hua ka puta ake i aua kōwhiringa.

**Haumarutanga**

3. Ka whakarite i ngā rautaki haumaruru hei tiaki i ngā motika a te ākongā me ētahi atu i roto i ngā horopaki huhua.

**Akoranga Koiri**

1. Ka whakamahi i ngā mātāpono koiri hei whakapai ake i ngā ariā pūkenga koiri whāiti.
2. Ka whakaatu i ngā āheinga koiri, me ngā whakaaro tōtika i ngā horopaki mātātaki.

**Whakamahinga Pūkenga Koiri**

3. Ka whakaatu i tōna mārama, i tōna tautoko i te whānuitanga o ngā hiahia me ngā tikanga a ētahi atu (ā-iwi, ā-hapori) i a ia e mahi koiri ana.
4. Ka whiriwhiri, ka ū tonu ki ngā mahi koiri me te tātari i ngā āhuetanga e pāpā ana ki te whai wāhitanga ki aua mahi koiri.

**Mātauranga Pūtaiao, Hangarau, Taiao me te Koiri**

5. Ka whakamahi i te mātauranga taiao, pūtaiao me te hangarau kia pakari ai ngā āheinga koiri i ngā horopaki maha.

**Hononga ki a Ranginui rāua ko Papatūānuku**

1. Ka arotake i te whaihua o ngā mahi me ngā tikanga a tētahi rōpū kaitiaki taiao.

**Hononga ki ētahi atu Taiao**

2. Ka tūhura i te mahi me ngā tikanga whaihua o te rohe, o te motu hei whakatairanga i te noho ora o te tangata me te noho haumaruru i roto i ngā taiao.
3. Ka tātari i ngā kaupapa a te kura me te hapori e whakatairanga ana i te noho ora me te noho haumaruru a te hunga taiohi.

**Whanaungatanga**

1. Ka tūhura me pēhea ngā whanonga, ngā uara me ngā waiaro o te tangata takitahi, o te rōpū hoki e pāpā ana ki te mauritau o tētahi atu.

**Huatau o te Whanaungatanga**

2. Ka whakarite rautaki me te whakaatu i ngā pūmanawa mahi e taea ai te aro ki ngā horopaki mātātaki i runga i te wairua tōtika.
3. Ka whakaatu i tōna mārama ki ngā āhuetanga e puta ai te tuakiri whaiaro o te tangata, kia taea ai te whakanui i tōna tū motuhake me te tiaki i tōna oranga wairua, oranga hinengaro, oranga tinana.



Kia kōtuituia ēnei āhuatanga ki ngā whenu katoa.

**TE WAIRUA  
NGĀ TIKANGA  
TE REO  
NGĀ UARA ME NGĀ WAIARO**

Waiora	Koiri	Taiao	Tangata
--------	-------	-------	---------

**Kai**

1. Ka tautohu i ētahi take kai ka pāpā mai ki ngā whānau, ki ngā hapori whānui rānei, me te whakatakoto rautaki ki te hiki ake i te oranga tangata.

**Tupuranga**

2. Ka arotake i ētahi take hauora ka pā atu ki te tangata, me te whakatakoto i ngā rautaki kia noho ora ai te tangata.
3. Ka tātari i te pānga mai o ngā momo huihuinga tāngata ki te noho ora o te tangata me te hapori.

**Haumarutanga**

4. Ka whakapakari pūkenga, whanonga hoki e pūmau ana ki ngā āhuatanga matatika, kia haumarū ai te noho a te tangata, a te rōpū, a te hapori.

**Akoranga Koiri**

1. Ka arotake, ka whakarerekē i ngā pūkenga koiri whāiti ki te whakawhanake i ōna āheinga, e nui ake ai ōna kōwhiringa mahi pārekareka.
2. Ka whakahāngai i ngā pūmanawa me te arotake i te haumarutanga ina puta he mātātaki kikokiko, he āhuatanga hou rānei.

**Whakamahinga Pūkenga Koiri**

3. Ka arotake, ka whakahāngai, ka whakamahi i ngā kaupapa koiri e tutuki ai ētahi hiahia o te hapori, o te iwi rānei.
4. Ka whakarite, ka whakatinana, ka arotake hoki i tētahi kaupapa koiri, me te tātari i ngā āhuatanga e tautoko ana i te mahi koiri hei hiki ake i te oranga tangata.

**Mātauranga Pūtaiao, Hangarau, Taiao me te Koiri**

5. Ka whakamahi i ngā mātauranga me ngā rauemi tōtika kia pakari ake ngā pūkenga koiri.

**Hononga ki a Ranginui rāua ko Papatūānuku**

1. Ka whakawhanake, ka whakatinana, ka arotake hoki i tētahi kaupapa tiaki taiao e whakauru ana i ngā tikanga mai i te tirohanga Māori.

**Hononga ki ētahi atu Taiao**

2. Ka akiaki kia wātea mai ngā ratonga me ngā rauemi e hāngai ana, e ea ai ngā hiahia o ngā tāngata i te kura, i te hapori rānei.
3. Ka arotake i te wāhi ki ngā ture, ngā kaupapa here me ngā tikanga, e ea ai te matatika pāpori, ahakoa i te kura, i te hapori rānei.

**Whanaungatanga**

1. Ka tātari i te āhua o ngā taura hono tāngata whaitake, ka aro atu ki ngā mātātaki me ngā hua ka puta.

**Huatau o te Whanaungatanga**

2. Ka tātari i ngā mōhihio, ka whiriwhiri whakatau, ka whakamahi i ngā pūmanawa mahi ngātahi hei whakataki i ngā taukumekume, i ngā whakataetae, me te rerekē haere o te āhua o ngā hononga tāngata.
3. Ka āta titiro ki ngā whakaaro me ngā uara o te porihanga e pā ana ki ētahi āhuatanga o te noho tahi; ka āta arotake i te pānga mai o ēnei ki te tuakiri whaiaro me te mauritau.



Kia kōtuituia ēnei āhuetanga ki ngā whenu katoa.

**TE WAIRUA  
NGĀ TIKANGA  
TE REO  
NGĀ UARA ME NGĀ WAIARO**

Waiora	Koiri	Taiao	Tangata
<p><b>Kai</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka āta tātari i ētahi take hauora o te ao whānui, me te whakapuaki whakaaro mō te pānga mai o aua take ki te oranga tangata me te uri whakatipu.</li> </ol> <p><b>Tupuranga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka āta arotake i ētahi raraunga hei āwhina i te whakatakoto rautaki e ora ai te tangata i ēnei rā me ngā rā kei te heke iho.</li> <li>3. Ka arotake i ngā tikanga, ngā waiaro me ngā ture a te porihanga e pā ana ki ngā take hauora o ēnei rā, me te tātari i te pānga mai o ēnei ki te oranga o te iwi.</li> </ol> <p><b>Haumarutanga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Ka tātari i ngā matawaenga, me ngā take matatika o ēnei wā e pā mai ana ki te noho ora o te tangata.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Akoranga Koiri</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka waihanga, ka whakamahi, ka arotake i ētahi rautaki hei whakawhanake i ngā pūmanawa koiri.</li> </ol> <p><b>Whakamahinga Pūkenga Koiri</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka hanga, ka whakamahi, ka arotake i ngā rautaki e tōtika ai, e haumaruru ai te whai wāhi atu ki ngā horopaki kikokiko, mātātaki rānei.</li> <li>3. Ka hanga, ka whakamahi i ngā rautaki e tutuki pai ai ngā hiahia o te iwi i roto i ngā mahi koiri whaiaro, koiri ā-rōpū rānei.</li> </ol> <p><b>Mātauranga Pūtaiao, Hangarau, Taiao me te Koiri</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Ka whakamātau, ka arohaehae i te hāngaitanga o te mātauranga me ngā rauemi pūtaiao, hangarau hoki ki ngā mahi whakapakari tinana.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Hononga ki a Ranginui rāua ko Papatūānuku</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka whakarite i tētahi kaupapa tiaki taiao o te rohe, o te motu, o te ao rānei mai i te tirohanga Māori, mā tētahi rōpū kaitiaki.</li> </ol> <p><b>Hononga ki ētahi atu Taiao</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka tūhura, ka whakatakoto whakaaro mō ngā rongoā taiao hei whakaora i te wairua, te hinengaro, me te tinana, me te noho haumaruru tonu.</li> <li>3. Ka āta tātari i te kōtuinga o ngā tāngata, ngā ratonga, te pānga mai o te hangarau me ngā ture e pā ana ki te oranga taiao.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Whanaungatanga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka āta tātari i te āhua o ngā hononga tāngata i ngā horopaki huihuinga tāngata huhua.</li> </ol> <p><b>Huatau o te Whanaungatanga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka āta tātari i ngā wheako, ngā waiaro me ngā uara ka whai wāhi mai ki ngā taukumekume; te whakaahua i ngā huarahi hei whai e pai ake ai ngā hononga tāngata.</li> <li>3. Ka āta tātari i te pānga mai o te tuakiri whaiaro, te tuakiri ā-iwi, me te tuakiri ā-motu ki te oranga o te tangata.</li> </ol>





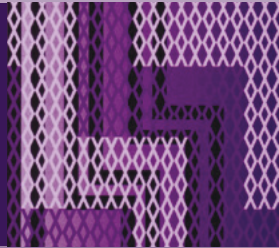
# HAUORA

# KUPU TAKA

āheinga koiri	<i>physical competence</i>	ratonga	<i>service</i>
akoranga koiri	<i>physical education</i>	raupapa koiri	<i>motor skill sequence</i>
arohaehae	<i>appraise; critique</i>	raupapa koiri āhua uaua	<i>complex motor skill sequence</i>
aupēhi	<i>peer pressure</i>	raupapa neke	<i>movement sequence</i>
haepapa	<i>responsible</i>	rawa	<i>natural resources</i>
haumaru(tanga)	<i>safe; safety</i>	taiohi	<i>teenager</i>
hihiri	<i>enthusiasm</i>	taiopenga	<i>festival</i>
kare ā-roto	<i>feeling; emotion</i>	takapau	<i>ceremonial mat</i>
kaupapa koiri	<i>physical activity programme</i>	torotoro	<i>explore</i>
kōhungahunga	<i>infant; toddler</i>	totoro	<i>stretch; extend</i>
kōtuitui	<i>integrate; synthesise</i>	tuakiri ā-iwi	<i>ethnic identity</i>
mahi koiri	<i>physical activity</i>	tuakiri ā-motu	<i>national identity</i>
mātāpono	<i>principle</i>	tuakiri whaiaro	<i>personal identity</i>
mātātaki	<i>challenge</i>	uara	<i>value</i>
matatika	<i>ethics; ethical</i>	waiaro	<i>attitude</i>
matatika pāpori	<i>social justice</i>	waihanga	<i>devise; create</i>
matawaenga	<i>dilemma</i>	whai wāhi atu	<i>experience; participate</i>
mōhiohio	<i>information</i>	whakaaroaro	<i>consider</i>
momo tākaro	<i>games</i>	whakaauaha	<i>creative</i>
motika	<i>rights</i>	whakaawe	<i>influence</i>
nekehanga	<i>movement</i>	whakahāngai	<i>adapt</i>
pāhekoheko(tanga)	<i>interaction; cooperative</i>	whakamahi	<i>use, apply</i>
pāpā	<i>influence, have an impact upon</i>	whakanikoniko	<i>embellish; enhance</i>
porihanga	<i>society</i>	whakarite	<i>plan</i>
pūhuruhurutanga	<i>puberty</i>	whakatairanga	<i>promote</i>
pūkenga koiri	<i>motor skill</i>	whakataurite	<i>compare and contrast</i>
pūkenga koiri whāiti	<i>fine motor skill</i>	whakataki	<i>manage</i>
pūkenga neke	<i>movement skills</i>	whakatakoto	<i>outline; propose</i>
pūmanawa	<i>natural talent; potential</i>	whakatinana	<i>implement</i>
pūnaha	<i>system</i>	whakatoihara	<i>discrimination; prejudice</i>
		whakawhena	<i>assert; be assertive</i>



# Tikanga ā-lwi



# TIKANGA Ā-IWI

*“Kāore i kotahi te whakahaere o ngā Tikanga ā-Iwi. He iwi anō me ōna tohunga me ōna tikanga me āna whakahaere. Hiki atu he iwi, pērā tonu. Nō reira, kia mau koe ki ōu ake ... Mā ō rātou uri e mau ō rātou nā kōrero. Engari kia mau koe ki ngā kōrero a ōu mātua, a ōu tūpuna. Ina ka tika, ka waiho mai ētahi mātauranga hei taonga mōu.”*

*[Te Whatahoro, 1865]*



## He aha te Tikanga ā-Iwi?

I puta ake te wairua o te Tikanga ā-Iwi i roto i ngā kupu a Te Whatahoro, arā, te āta titiro ki ngā āhuatanga huhua o te tangata e mārama ai te ākongā ki tōna ao. Ka tirohia ngā mahi a te tangata hei whakatutuki i ōna matea kikokiko, matea pāpori, matea ngākau, matea wairua hoki.

Ka ākona te kaupapa o te Tikanga ā-Iwi mai i te taumata 1 o te kura tuatahi ki te taumata 5 o te kura tuarua. He kōwhiringa te Tikanga ā-Iwi, te Hītori, te Matawhenua me te Ōhanga mai i te taumata 6 ki te taumata 8 o te kura tuarua.



## He aha ngā hua o te ako i te Tikanga ā-Iwi?

I roto i te Tikanga ā-Iwi ka whakawhanaketia e te ākongā tōna mōhio ki ngā āhuatanga porihanga me tōna mārama ki ngā āhuatanga whanonga tangata.

Mā tēnei, ka taea e te ākongā te uru i runga i te mōhio, i te haepapa hoki, ki ngā mahi waihanga porihanga.

Ko te Tiriti o Waitangi me ōna āhuatanga katoa te tāhū o te Tikanga ā-Iwi. E mārama ai te ākongā ki tōna ake tūrangawaewae mā te arotahi ki ngā tāngata, ngā tūāhua me ngā whakaawenga i waihanga ai te porihanga o Aotearoa.

Ka titiro hoki te ākongā ki te noho a ngā iwi o tāwāhi, arā, ki tā rātou nei titiro ki te ao.

Ka tūhura hoki te ākongā i ngā take o te wā kia mārama ai ia ki ngā tūāhua me ngā tāngata tāpua o tēnei ao.



## He pēhea te hanganga o te Tikanga ā-Iwi?

E whā ngā whenu o te Tikanga ā-Iwi.

I roto i te whenu o Te Whakaritenga Pāpori me te Ahurea ka whakawhanake te ākongā i tōna mōhio tangata me tōna māramatanga ki:

- ngā take me ngā huarahi e whakarite ai te tangata i a ia anō ki te whakatutuki i ōna matea;
- ngā motika, ngā tūranga me ngā haepapa o te tangata i a ia e pāhekoheko ana i waenga rōpū;
- te hononga o te ahurea ki te tuakiri o te tangata me ngā putanga iho o te pāhekohekotanga ahurea.

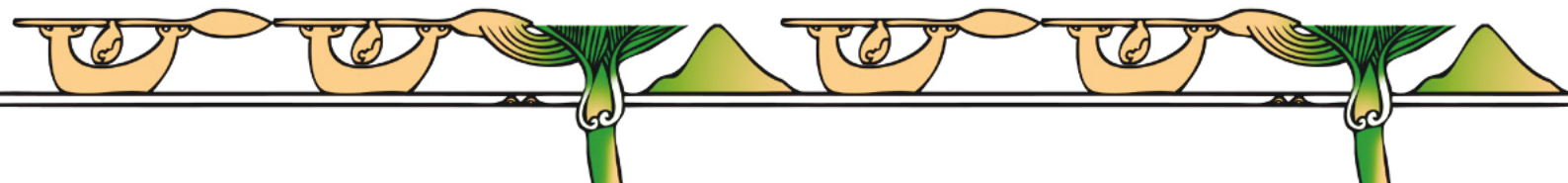


I roto i te whenu o Te Ao Hurihuri ka whakawhanake te ākongā i tōna mōhio tangata me tōna māramatanga ki:

- ngā pānga i waenga i te tangata me ngā tūāhua o mua, ngā whakaono me ngā whakaawenga i waihanga ai te porihanga;
- ngā whakamāoritanga o aua pānga i te huringa o te wā.

I roto i te whenu o Te Wāhi me te Taiao ka whakawhanake te ākongā i tōna mōhio tangata me tōna māramatanga ki:

- ngā pāhekohekotanga o te tangata ki te wāhi me te taiao;
- ngā mahi a te tangata hei atawhai i te taiao.



# TIKANGA Ā-IWI

I roto i te whenu o Ngā Mahinga Ohaoha ka whakawhanake te ākonga i tōna mōhiotanga me tōna māramatanga ki:

- ngā huarahi whakamahi, tohatoha, whakahaere hoki a te tangata i ngā rawa;
- ngā take me ngā huarahi e whakauru atu ai te tangata ki ngā mahinga ohaoha.

Ko te huarahi ako i te Tikanga ā-Iwi ko te tukanga o te pakirehua pāpori. Mā roto i tēnei tukanga ka whai wāhi te ākonga ki:

- te patapatai, te tukatuka mōhiohio me te whakawhiti kitenga;
- te tūhura i ngā rerekētanga o te titiro, te whakaaro me te uara, me ngā take mō ēnei;
- te tiro tiro take, te tautohu me te arotake otinga, me te whakatau huarahi hei whakatutuki kaupapa pāpori.



## Te Whakaritenga Pāpori me te Ahurea

*Whiria te kaha tūātinitini, whiria te kaha tūāmanomano.*

*Nō ngā tūpuna, tuku iho, tuku iho.*

## Te Ao Hurihuri

*E tama, e hine, tangata i ākona ki te whare, tū ana ki te marae, tau ana.*

## Te Wāhi me te Taiao

*Kotahi tonu te matua o te tangata Māori, ko Ranginui e tū nei, ko Papatūānuku e takoto nei.*

## Ngā Mahinga Ohaoha

*E kore e ngaoko te rākau ki te tīkina i te pūtake whakangaoko ai, engari, me tiki ki te matamata.*

## Whāinga Matua

I roto i te whenu o Te Whakaritenga Pāpori me te Ahurea ka whakawhanake mōhiotanga te ākonga ki:

- ngā take me ngā huarahi e whakarite ai te tangata i a ia anō ki te whakatutuki i ōna matea;
- ngā motika, ngā tūranga me ngā haepapa o te tangata i a ia e pāhekoheko ana i waenga rōpū;
- te hononga o te ahurea ki te tuakiri o te tangata me ngā putanga iho o te pāhekohekotanga ahurea.

I roto i te whenu o Te Ao Hurihuri ka whakawhanake mōhiotanga te ākonga ki:

- ngā pānga i waenga i te tangata me ngā tūāhua o mua, ngā whakapono me ngā whakaawenga i waihangatia ai te porihanga;
- ngā whakamāoritanga o aua pānga i te huringa o te wā.

I roto i te whenu o Te Wāhi me te Taiao ka whakawhanake mōhiotanga te ākonga ki:

- ngā pāhekohekotanga o te tangata ki te wāhi me te taiao;
- ngā mahi a te tangata hei atawhai i te taiao.

I roto i te whenu o Ngā Mahinga Ohaoha ka whakawhanake mōhiotanga te ākonga ki:

- ngā huarahi whakamahi, tohatoha, whakahaere hoki a te tangata i ngā rawa;
- ngā take me ngā huarahi e whakauru atu ai te tangata ki ngā mahinga ohaoha.



## Te Whakaritenga Pāpori me te Ahurea

*Whiria te kaha  
tūātinitini,  
whiria te kaha  
tūāmanomano.  
Nō ngā tūpuna, tuku  
iho, tuku iho.*

## Te Ao Hurihuri

*E tama, e hine, tangata  
i ākona ki te whare,  
tū ana ki te marae,  
tau ana.*

## Te Wāhi me te Taiao

*Kotahi tonu te matua  
o te tangata Māori, ko  
Ranginui e tū nei,  
ko Papatūānuku e  
takoto nei.*

## Ngā Mahinga Ohaoha

*E kore e ngaoko te  
rākau ki te tīkina i te  
pūtake whakangaoko ai,  
engari, me tiki ki te  
matamata.*

### TAUMATA 1

1.1 Ka whakamārama  
i ngā take e uru  
atu ai te tangata  
ki te rōpū.

1.1 Ka whakaahua  
i ngā kaupapa  
me ngā tūāhua  
whakahirahira o  
tōna ao.

1.1 Ka whakamārama  
i ngā āhuatanga  
tūturu me ngā  
āhuatanga ahurea  
o tētahi wāhi.

### TAUMATA 2

2.1 Ka whakamārama  
i ngā tūranga  
me ngā haepapa  
ka kawea e te  
tangata i roto i te  
rōpū.

2.2 Ka whakamārama  
i ngā āhuatanga  
ahurea me ngā  
tuku ihotanga o  
tōna ake iwi, me ō  
ētahi atu iwi hoki.

2.1 Ka whakamārama  
i ngā take me  
ngā huarahi e  
whakaaro nuitia  
ai e te tangata  
ngā wā o mua.

2.1 Ka whakaahua i  
te whakaawenga  
o ngā mahi a te  
tangata i te wāhi  
me te taiao, me  
te whakaawenga  
o te wāhi me te  
taiao i ngā mahi a  
te tangata.

## Te Whakaritenga Pāpori me te Ahurea

*Whiria te kaha  
tūātinini,  
whiria te kaha  
tūāmanomano.  
Nō ngā tūpuna, tuku  
iho, tuku iho.*

## Te Ao Hurihuri

*E tama, e hine, tangata  
i ākona ki te whare,  
tū ana ki te marae,  
tau ana.*

## Te Wāhi me te Taiao

*Kotahi tonu te matua  
o te tangata Māori, ko  
Ranginui e tū nei,  
ko Papatūānuku e  
takoto nei.*

## Ngā Mahinga Ohaoha

*E kore e ngaoko te  
rākau ki te tīkina i te  
pūtake whakangaoko ai,  
engari, me tiki ki te  
matamata.*

## TAUMATA 3

3.1 Ka whakamārama i ngā huarahi e whiwhi ai, e kawae ai hoki, te kaiārahi i tōna tūranga.

3.2 Ka whakamārama i ngā take e whakarite ai, e whakamahi ai hoki, te tangata i te ritenga me te ture.

3.3 Ka whakamārama i te rerekētanga o ngā mahi a ngā rōpū ahurea, ahakoa e whakaata tonu ana ēnei i ētahi pūtake ōrite.

3.1 Ka whakamārama i te whakaawenga o ngā whakaaro me ngā mahi a te tangata i te oranga o ētahi atu i ngā wā o mua.

3.2 Ka whakamārama i ngā huarahi e taea e te takitahi me te rōpū te urupare ki te panoni.

3.1 Ka whakaahua i ngā huarahi i pāhekoheko ai, i urutau ai te tangata ki te taiao i ngā wā o mua.

3.2 Ka whakamārama i ngā take me ngā huarahi e whakaatu ai te tangata i tōna hononga ki tētahi tino wāhi, ki tētahi tino taiao.

## Te Whakaritenga Pāpori me te Ahurea

*Whiria te kaha  
tūātinitini,  
whiria te kaha  
tūāmanomano.  
Nō ngā tūpuna, tuku  
iho, tuku iho.*

## Te Ao Hurihuri

*E tama, e hine, tangata  
i ākona ki te whare,  
tū ana ki te marae,  
tau ana.*

## Te Wāhi me te Taiao

*Kotahi tonu te matua  
o te tangata Māori, ko  
Ranginui e tū nei,  
ko Papatūānuku e  
takoto nei.*

## Ngā Mahinga Ohaoha

*E kore e ngaoko te  
rākau ki te tīkina i te  
pūtake whakangaoko ai,  
engari, me tiki ki te  
matamata.*

## TAUMATA 4

4.1 Ka whakamārama i te whakaritenga a te tangata i a ia anō hei urupare ki te mātātaki, ki te mōrearea rānei.

4.2 Ka whakamārama i ngā take me ngā huarahi e tukuna iho ai e te takitahi me ngā rōpū, ō rātou ahurea, ō rātou tuku ihotanga, kia mau pūmau.

4.1 Ka tautohu i ngā pūtake me ngā otinga o ngā tūāhua kua waihanga i te oranga o te tangata.

4.2 Ka whakaahua i ngā huarahi e tuhia ai, e maumaharatia ai ngā mahi o mua.

4.1 Ka whakamārama i ngā whakaatatanga o te wāhi i ngā pāhekohekotanga o te tangata ki te taiao i ngā wā o mua.

4.2 Ka whakamārama i ngā whaiwāhitanga me ngā mātātaki o te torotoro mō te tangata, te wāhi me te taiao.

4.1 Ka whakamārama i ngā take me ngā huarahi e rerekē ai te titiro me te whakamahi a te tangata i te rawa me ngā putanga iho o ēnei āhuetanga.

4.2 Ka whakamārama i ngā take me ngā huarahi e whai ai te takitahi me te rōpū kia tiakina ngā motika o te kaiwhakapeto.

## Te Whakaritenga Pāpori me te Ahurea

*Whiria te kaha tūātinitini, whiria te kaha tūāmanomano. Nō ngā tūpuna, tuku iho, tuku iho.*

## Te Ao Hurihuri

*E tama, e hine, tangata i ākona ki te whare, tū ana ki te marae, tau ana.*

## Te Wāhi me te Taiao

*Kotahi tonu te matua o te tangata Māori, ko Ranginui e tū nei, ko Papatūānuku e takoto nei.*

## Ngā Mahinga Ohaoha

*E kore e ngaoko te rākau ki te tīkina i te pūtake whakangaoko ai, engari, me tiki ki te matamata.*

## TAUMATA 5

5.1 Ka whakamārama i te whakaritenga o ngā pūnaha kāwanatanga, me te whakaawenga o ēnei i te āhua noho a te tangata.

5.2 Ka whakamārama i ngā huarahi i whakawhanaketia ai, i puritia ai, i urutautia ai, te tuakiri ahurea me te tuakiri ā-motu.

5.1 Ka whakamārama i te whakaawenga o ngā tūāhua o mua i ngā hononga i roto, i waenga hoki, i te rōpū, me te haere tonu o ēnei whakaawenga.

5.2 Ka whakamārama i ngā whakapono me ngā mahi a ngā tāngata o mua kua waihanga i te porihanga o Aotearoa.

5.1 Ka whakamārama i ngā take e neke haere ai te tangata ki wāhi kē, me ngā putanga iho o ēnei nekehanga ki te tangata me te wāhi.

5.2 Ka whakamārama i te papātanga o ngā huarahi whakahaere rawa ki runga i te whāoomotanga o te taiao.

5.1 Ka whakamārama i te papātanga o ngā whakataunga ohaoha ki runga i te tangata, te hāpori me te whenua.

5.2 Ka whakamārama i ngā huarahi e whakatairanga ai te tangata i te whanaketanga ohaoha mā te pakihi, te hinonga me te auahatanga.

## Te Whakaritenga Pāpori me te Ahurea

*Whiria te kaha tūātinitini, whiria te kaha tūāmanomano. Nō ngā tūpuna, tuku iho, tuku iho.*

## Te Ao Hurihuri

*E tama, e hine, tangata i ākona ki te whare, tū ana ki te marae, tau ana.*

## Te Wāhi me te Taiao

*Kotahi tonu te matua o te tangata Māori, ko Ranginui e tū nei, ko Papatūānuku e takoto nei.*

## Ngā Mahinga Ohaoha

*E kore e ngaoko te rākau ki te tīkina i te pūtake whakangaoko ai, engari, me tiki ki te matamata.*

## TAUMATA 6

### Tikanga ā-Iwi

- 6.1 Ko te mahi takitahi, ā-rōpū, ā-pūtahitanga rānei, ki te whakatairanga i te tōkeke pāpori me ngā motika tangata.
- 6.2 Ko te urutau me te rerekē haere o ngā ahurea, me ngā putanga iho o ēnei mō te porihanga.

### Hītori

- 6.1 Ko ngā pūtaketanga me ngā otinga o ngā tūāhua o mua i waihanga i te āhua noho a te iwi o Aotearoa.
- 6.2 He rerekē te titiro a te tangata ki ngā tūāhua o mua e whai tikanga ana ki Aotearoa.

### Matawhenua

- 6.1 He motuhake tonu ngā āhuatanga o te taiao tūturu me te taiao ahurea, ā, ka waihangatia ēnei e ngā tukanga whakaauaha taurira mokowā.
- 6.2 He maha ngā ara pāhekoheko rerekē a te tangata ki tōna taiao.

### Ōhanga

- 6.1 Nā te mōmōhanga, ka whakatau tikanga ngā kaiwhakapeto, ngā kaiwhakanao me te kāwanatanga ka pā ki te porihanga o Aotearoa.
- 6.2 He taupuhipuhi ngā rāngai rerekē o te ōhanga o Aotearoa.

## Te Whakaritenga Pāpori me te Ahurea

*Whiria te kaha tūātinini, whiria te kaha tūāmanomano. Nō ngā tūpuna, tuku iho, tuku iho.*

## Te Ao Hurihuri

*E tama, e hine, tangata i ākona ki te whare, tū ana ki te marae, tau ana.*

## Te Wāhi me te Taiao

*Kotahi tonu te matua o te tangata Māori, ko Ranginui e tū nei, ko Papatūānuku e takoto nei.*

## Ngā Mahinga Ohaoha

*E kore e ngaoko te rākau ki te tīkina i te pūtake whakangaoko ai, engari, me tiki ki te matamata.*

## TAUMATA 7

### Tikanga ā-Iwi

- 7.1 Ka kawea, ka whakamahia e ngā hapori me ngā whenua o rātou haepapa me o rātou motika i roto i ngā horopaki ā-hapori, ā-whenua, ā-ao hoki.
- 7.2 I ētahi wā, nā te rerekē o ngā whakapono me ngā ariā ahurea, ka tutū te puehu, ka puta te mānukanuka.

### Hītori

- 7.1 Ko ngā āinga me ngā rōpū o mua i whakaawe i ngā pūtaketanga me ngā otinga o ngā tūāhua o mua e whai tikanga ana ki Aotearoa.
- 7.2 He rerekē ngā whakamārama a tēnā iwi, a tēnā iwi, mō ngā tūāhua e whai tikanga ana ki ngā tāngata o Aotearoa.

### Matawhenua

- 7.1 Ka rerekē haere ngā tauira tūturu, ngā tauira ahurea me ngā tukanga i te takanga o te wā, ā, ka rerekē anō te kōrahi mai i tēnā wāhi, ki tēnā wāhi.
- 7.2 Kua rerekē haere ngā whakaaro me ngā hononga ki te taiao tūturu me te taiao ahurea.

### Ōhanga

- 7.1 Mā te ōhanga ka mārara ngā take ohaoha o Aotearoa i tēnei wā.
- 7.2 Haere kōtui ai ngā take ohaoha kei Aotearoa nei.

## Te Whakaritenga Pāpori me te Ahurea

*Whiria te kaha  
tūātinitini,  
whiria te kaha  
tūāmanomano.  
Nō ngā tūpuna, tuku  
iho, tuku iho.*

## Te Ao Hurihuri

*E tama, e hine, tangata i  
ākona ki te whare,  
tū ana ki te marae,  
tau ana.*

## Te Wāhi me te Taiao

*Kotahi tonu te matua  
o te tangata Māori, ko  
Ranginui e tū nei,  
ko Papatūānuku e  
takoto nei.*

## Ngā Mahinga Ohaoha

*E kore e ngaoko te  
rākau ki te tīkina i te  
pūtake whakangaoko  
ai, engari, me tiki ki  
te matamata.*

## TAUMATA 8

### Tikanga ā-Iwi

### Hītori

### Matawhenua

### Ōhanga

8.1 Mā ngā whakapono tōrangapū e waihanga te porihanga, ā, e rerekē ana te urupare a te takitahi, a te rōpū rānei ki ēnei whakapono tōrangapū.

8.2 Ka whakaawe te āhua o te whakahou i ngā motika, ngā tūranga me ngā haepapa o te takitahi me te hapori, ā, ka whakaawe anō hoki ngā motika, ngā tūranga me ngā haepapa o te takitahi me te hapori i te āhua o te whakahou.

8.1 Ko ngā pūtakatanga, ngā otinga me ngā whakamāramatanga i ngā tūāhua o mua e whai tikanga ana ki Aotearoa nei, he tino pakeke, ā, kei te tautohetia.

8.2 E whakaata mai ana ngā tikanga o te wā i ngā āinga pāpori, ngā āinga ohaoha me ngā āinga tōrangapū hoki.

8.1 Ko ngā taiao tūturu me ngā taiao ahurea ka waihangatia e ngā tukanga pāhekoheko, ā, ka taka i raro i ngā pāpātanga me ngā kōrahi rerekē.

8.2 He rerekē ngā uara, ngā whakaaro me ngā urupare a te tangata ki ngā kōwhiringa, ngā aukati me ngā otinga ohaoha, pāpori, ā-taiao hoki o te whakarite me te whakatau kaupapa.

8.1 Tino māia ngā mākete kei te pai ngā mahi, engari me whakatōtika te kāwanatanga i ngā mākete kāhore i te tuku pai, i te tuku tika rānei, i ngā hua.

8.2 He maha tonu ngā whakaawenga kei runga i te āhua me te rahi o te ōhanga o Aotearoa.

# TIKANGA Ā-IWI

# KUPU TAKA

āhuatanga ahurea	<i>cultural feature</i>	mōhiotanga	<i>knowledge</i>
āhuatanga tūturu	<i>natural feature</i>	mōmōhanga	<i>scarce</i>
ahurea	<i>culture</i>	mōrearea	<i>crisis</i>
ahurei	<i>unique</i>	motika	<i>right</i>
āinga	<i>force (e.g. historical)</i>	motika tangata	<i>human right</i>
āinga pāpori	<i>social force</i>	ngā take o te wā	<i>current events</i>
arotahi	<i>focus</i>	ngā tikanga o te wā	<i>trends over time</i>
auahatanga	<i>creativity</i>	ōhanga	<i>economics; economy</i>
aukati	<i>constraint</i>	ohaoha	<i>economic</i>
e whai tikanga ana ki ...	<i>having significance for ...</i>	oranga	<i>life</i>
haepapa	<i>responsible; responsibility</i>	otinga	<i>outcome; effect</i>
haere kōtui	<i>interrelated</i>	pāhekoheko	<i>interact</i>
hāpori	<i>community</i>	pāhekohekotanga ahurea	<i>cultural interaction</i>
hinonga	<i>enterprise</i>	pakihi	<i>business</i>
hītori	<i>history</i>	pakirehua	<i>inquiry</i>
hononga	<i>relationship</i>	pakirehua pāpori	<i>social inquiry</i>
horopaki	<i>context</i>	pānga	<i>effect; relationship</i>
huringa o te wā	<i>over time</i>	panoni	<i>change</i>
kaiārahi	<i>leader</i>	papātanga	<i>impact</i>
kaiwhakanāo	<i>producer</i>	pāpātanga	<i>rate</i>
kaiwhakapeto	<i>consumer</i>	pāpori	<i>social; socio-</i>
kitenga	<i>finding</i>	porihanga	<i>society</i>
kōrahi	<i>scale</i>	pūtahitanga	<i>institution</i>
kōwhiringa	<i>option; choice</i>	pūtake	<i>purpose</i>
mahinga ahurea	<i>cultural practice</i>	pūtaketanga	<i>cause</i>
mahinga ohaoha	<i>economic activity</i>	putanga iho	<i>outcome</i>
mānukanuka	<i>tension</i>	rāngai	<i>sector</i>
māramatanga	<i>understanding</i>	rawa	<i>resource</i>
mātātaki	<i>challenge</i>	ritenga	<i>rule</i>
matawhenua	<i>geography</i>	taiao ahurea	<i>cultural environment</i>
matea kikokiko	<i>physical need</i>	taiao tūturu	<i>natural environment</i>
matea ngākau	<i>emotional need</i>	take ohaoha	<i>economic issue</i>
matea pāpori	<i>social need</i>	take taiao	<i>environmental issue</i>
mōhiohio	<i>information; informed</i>		

# TIKANGA Ā-IWI

# KUPU TAKA

takitahi	<i>individual</i>
tāpua	<i>significant</i>
tauirā ahurea	<i>cultural pattern</i>
tauirā mokowā	<i>spatial pattern</i>
tauirā tuturu	<i>natural pattern</i>
taupuhipuhi	<i>interdependent</i>
tautohe(tia)	<i>contested</i>
tautohu	<i>identify</i>
te takanga o te wā	<i>over time</i>
tikanga tuku iho	<i>tradition</i>
tino pakeke	<i>complex</i>
tohatoha	<i>allocate</i>
tōkeke pāpori	<i>social justice</i>
torotoro	<i>explore; exploration</i>
tūāhua	<i>event</i>
tūāhua o mua	<i>past event</i>
tūāhua whakahirahira	<i>important event</i>
tuakiri	<i>identity</i>
tuakiri ā-motu = tuakiri ā-whenua	<i>national identity</i>
tūhura	<i>investigate</i>
tukanga	<i>process</i>
tukanga pāhekoheko	<i>interacting process</i>
tukatuka mōhiohio	<i>process information</i>
tuku ihotanga	<i>heritage</i>
tūranga	<i>role</i>
urupare	<i>respond; response</i>
urutau	<i>adapt</i>
waihanga	<i>shape</i>
whai tūranga	<i>acquire role</i>
whai wāhi (ki) ...	<i>participate; have opportunity</i>
whaiwāhitanga	<i>opportunity</i>
whakaahua	<i>describe</i>
whakaaro nui(tia)	<i>important</i>

whakaataata	<i>reflect</i>
whakaauaha	<i>create</i>
whakaawe(nga)	<i>influence; affect</i>
whakahou	<i>reform</i>
whakamāoritanga	<i>interpretation</i>
whakapono	<i>belief</i>
whakapono tōrangapū	<i>political ideology</i>
whakaputa tuakiri	<i>expressing identity</i>
whakatairanga	<i>promote</i>
whakatōtika	<i>intervene (correct)</i>
whakatutuki (matea tangata)	<i>meet (peoples' needs)</i>
whakauru	<i>engage</i>
whakawhiwhinga	<i>acquisition</i>
whanaketanga	<i>development</i>
whanonga tangata	<i>human behaviour</i>
whāomoomotanga	<i>sustainability</i>
whenua = motu	<i>country; nation</i>

# Ngā Toi





## Iho Toi

Kei te tipua, e Toi  
 Hiko kau ana te ngākau i tō karanga  
 Mā tō ngākau te wairua e hiki  
 Mā tō wairua te reo e tuku  
 Mā tō reo te hinengaro e whakapuaki  
 Mā te hinengaro te kupu e raranga  
 Mā te raranga i te kupu te taonga tuku iho e whakairo.

Mau ake ana i tō hei tiki  
 Ko Puoro e tangi nei  
 Ko Rēhia me ōna wiwini, ōna wawana  
 Ko Ataata me ōna kanohi  
 E rere ai te reo hei herenga.  
 Mau kau atu ōu kamo ki ngā iwi  
 Mai i te ao kōhatu ki te ao mārama  
 Kia pā mai, kia pā atu tō hā.

Kia hiko tonu!  
 Tukua te hinengaro kia rere,  
 kia kore ai ngā taonga nei e noho tapu,  
 e noho kōhatu.  
 Heipū noa he noa atu te patu;  
 te tatangi, te wiri,  
 te whātero e.



## Te Whaitake o Ngā Toi

Ekehia ngā toi maunga kia whitikia e te toi awe haukura o te atatū, ko te toi ka taea i te ringa hangahanga o te tohunga toi. Ko Toi te uri o Mahara Pohewa. Toi whakaataata e kitea ai ngā uriuri o te hinengaro, mā toi ka rere te toi ora tangata.

He toi tupu, he toi ora, he toi i ahu mai i Hawaiki. Kia mau ki te toi hanga whare tangata, okioki i te toi o te maunga. Ko te toi ka ora, ko te iwi ka toitū. E tū ana te haka, he tohu whenua rangatira te haka, te haka a Tānerore. Ko te haka a Hineruhi ka tū i te ata hāpara. Te toi whakaaro, ka ihiihi, ka wehiwehi, ka aweawe te ao katoa.

Nā Hirini Melbourne

## Te Hanga o tēnei Wāhanga Ako

Ko ngā toi te kaikawe i ō tātou whakaaro, tirohanga, hiahia, tūmanako, kia kitea ai e te ao. Ka whakaatatia tā tātou titiro ki te ao tawhito, ki te ao hurihuri, ki te ao anamata, mā roto i ngā puoro, i ngā toi ataata me ngā mahi a te rēhia. Mā ngā toi e whakapakari te wairua, te wehi, te wana, te ihi, te mauri. Nā te hiringa o te mahara o te tohunga toi, ka whakaatu āna taonga i ngā mea ka kitea me ngā mea kāore e kitea. Hāngai pū ai a Ngā Toi ki te harakoatanga, ki te katakata, ki ngā hapa, ki ngā haututū whakamātautau, ngā hōhātanga hoki. Hāunga tērā, kia māia, kia kaha tonu ki te whai i te māramatanga – mā roto i tērā ka kitea, tērā ka rongohia, ngā toi whakaari, te kanikani rānei.

Ka whakanui te wāhanga ako o Ngā Toi i ngā pūkenga me ngā mātauranga o mua, ā, ka whakamana, ka wero hoki i ngā tokonga whakaaro o ēnei rā me ngā rā kei te tū. Whāia, ka tipu te mātauranga, te taha hāpori, te ahurea me te wairua. Kāore e mutu te tipu me te whanake o ngā toi, koinā te take ka ngāwari ai ngā whāinga paetae o tēnei wāhanga ako. Kua āta whakaritea ngā whāinga paetae kia whānui, i runga i te whakaaro he maha ngā kuhunga, ā, he tirohanga tā tēnā tangata, he tirohanga tā tēnā tangata mō ngā toi. Kāore hoki he mutunga o ngā wheako. He maha ngā hononga, ngā manakohanga, ngā mōhiotanga, ngā ariā, ngā tokonga whakaaro mai i te marautanga toi tawhito kua whai wāhi ki te marautanga toi hou.

Ko te whāinga matau i te taumata 1 me te taumata 2, ko te tūhura me te whakatipu i ngā pūkenga toi; ko te nanao ki ngā papanga me ngā taputapu; ko te hopu me te whai māramatanga a te tangata ki āna ake taonga toi. Hei ngā taumata 3 ki te 5, ka arotahi ki ngā takatūtanga mō ngā mahi toi, te wānanga i ngā toi, te whakamātau i ngā ariā mō ngā toi, te whakamārama i ngā mahi toi a tngata kē, me te tuku i ngā whakaaro mō ngā toi kia rere. Hei ngā taumata 6 ki te 8, ko te tātari me te whakakoi i ngā mahi me ngā tokonga whakaaro. Kātahi ētahi tāngata patapatai, arohaehae ko ngā tāngata toi, ahakoa te mea nā rātou, nā tētahi atu kē te taonga toi. Ka anga ngā whāinga paetae o tēnei taumata ki te kuhu a te ākongā ki ngā take kura tuatoru, ki ngāmahi taonga toi hoki. Ka tīmata hoki i konei te whanake me te whakakoikoi a ngā ākongā i te momo toi ka hiahia rātou ki te whai.

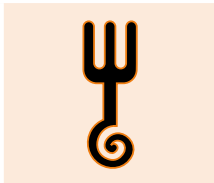
Kua mahia ngā tohu kia mārama ai te hono ki te whenu; te tūhura, te mahi, te mōhiotanga me te maioha. Ehara i te mea mō ake tonu atu ēnei tohu, heoi, he tauira noa ki ngā mea ka taea e te kaiako me ngā whāinga paerae ina whakatakotoria ai ngā whakamaherehere mō te hōtaka o Ngā Toi.

Ko te tikanga o ngā huānga he whakawhanake i ngā kaupapa, me hāngai anō te whakauru atu i ngā hūanga toi kia whai kiko tonu ai ngā mahi. Mā te mahi mārika rawa i ēnei, e puta ai ngā huapai me te kounga. Te huahua noa o ngā huānga ka taea e te ringa toi, kei ngā wāhanga ako katoa o tēnei marautanga ka ora ēnei āhuatanga.

# NGĀ TOI

## Ngā Whenu Toi

Ko te tekoteko te whakakitenga o te mahinga nui ki te whakahiato tirohanga whānui ki tēnei mea te ako, ā, hei arotahitanga hoki ki te ako i ngā toi. Ko ngā whenu, ko ngā tohu, ka hāngai ki ngā wāhanga o te tūhura, te mahi, te mōhiotanga me te maioha, hei aronga i roto i ngā tikanga ako. Heoi, ka honoa tētahi ki tētahi, kia tū mai ko te tekoteko, he whakamaharatanga ki a tātou katoa, mā te mahinga tahitanga o ngā wāhanga katoa o ngā whenu e nui atu ai ngā wheako mō ngā toi.



Te Tūhura – ka aro nuitia te tūhura, te torotoro, te rāwekeweke, me te whakamāori.



Te Mahi – ka aro nuitia te hanga, ka whakaarohia anō te tito, te tuhi, te tā, te whakatau mahi.



Te Mōhiotanga – ka aro nuitia te whakaatu a te ākongā i ōna mōhiotanga me tōna mārama ki ngā mahi toi.



Te Maioha – ka aro nuitia te arotake a te ākongā i runga i te mōhiotanga me tōna mārama ki āna mahi toi, me ngā mahi a ētahi atu.

**Toi Puoro**

**Ngā Mahi  
a te Rēhia**

**Toi Ataata**

**Ngā Pou**

**Ngā Whenu Toi**

**Ngā Ahuatanga Toi**

**Ngā Wāhanga Ako**

**Ngā Mahi Toi**



Te Tūhura  
Te Mahi  
Te Mōhiotanga  
Te Maioha

## TAUMATA 1

## TAUMATA 2

### Ariā Matua

Mā te raweke i ngā rawa huhua o te ao tangata me te ao māori, ka tū māia ki te whai wheako toi.

### Toi Ataata



Ka tūhura, ka whakauru atu, ka whai mōhiotanga, ka whai māramatanga:

- Ψ i ngā huānga me ngā ariā;
- ⌘ ki ngā tohu o tōna ao.

Ka whakawhanake, ka whakamahi i runga i te haumaruru, i te auaha hoki, ka whai whakaaro, ka kite:

- ⌘ i ōna ariā me ōna pūkenga;
- ⌘ i ngā taputapu me ngā rawa;
- ⌘ i ngā tūmomo hua, tohu me ngā taurira huhua.

### Ngā Mahi a te Rēhia



Ka tūhura, ka whakamahi, ka whai māramatanga, ka whakanui:

- ⌘ i ngā huānga o te whakaari mā te tinana, mā te oro, me te kupu;
- ⌘ i ngā momo mokowā, me te whakauru atu ki te mahi tāwhai mā te tuku noa;
- ⌘ i te whakamahi tahi i te tinana me te reo i roto i ngā horopaki huhua;
- ⌘ i āna mahi whakaari me ā ētahi atu.

Ka tūhura, ka hanga noa, ka whakakaupapa, ka whakaputa:

- ⌘ i te hononga o te mahi ā-tinana ki te reo ā-waha;
- ⌘ i ētahi mahi ā-tinana mai i ōna wheako whaiaro me te pohewatanga;
- ⌘ i ngā kupu āhua o te tū ki te kōrero;
- ⌘ i ētahi whakaaturanga kua kitea e ia.

### Toi Puoro



Ka tūhura, ka whakauru atu, ka whai māramatanga:

- ⌘ i ngā huānga me ngā momo oro o te taiao e mahia ana i ia rā;
- ⌘ ki ngā mahi puoro, mā te whakarongo, te tāwhai, te paparua me te mahi auaha noa;
- ⌘ ki te tini me te rerekē o te oro.

Ka tūhura, ka whakamōhio mai, ka whakaatu ūngeri ngāwari, ka whakaputa whakaaro:

- ⌘ i ētahi tūmomo tangi;
- ⌘ i ngā ariā o te rangi i roto i te huhua o ngā waiata me ngā mahi puoro;
- ⌘ i ngā waiata tawhito me ngā momo waiata o nāiane; ki ngā huānga puoro.

## TAUMATA 3

## TAUMATA 4

### Ariā Matua

Ki roto i ngā tukanga toi hei hanga kaupapa, hei mahi ngātahitanga, hei whakarerekē, hei whakaniko i ngā mahi, hei whakawhanake whakaaro, ariā hoki.

### Toi Ataata



Ka tūhura whānui, ka whakawhanake, ka whai mōhiotanga, ka kite:

- Ψ i ngā ariā;
- ⚡ i ōna wheako whaiaro;
- ⚡ i ngā whakawhiti ariā tikanga ahurea me ōna uaratanga;
- ⚡ i te huhua o ngā tohu.

Ka whakawhanake ariā, ka whakapakari pūkenga, ka whakamārama, ka whai māramatanga te ākongā:

- Ψ mā te tūhura me te whakamahi i ngā hua o ngā rawa, rawa tā, me ngā taputapu;
- ⚡ i ngā mahi o te whiriwhiri tukanga rawa tā, me te tautohu taputapu;
- ⚡ mā te whakamahi i ngā tukanga me ngā rawa tā a te kaitoi.

### Ngā Mahi a te Rēhia



Ka tūhura, ka whakamahi, ka whakaatu, ka whakaputa:

- Ψ i ngā nekehanga i roto i ngā horopaki huhua;
- ⚡ i ētahi tūmomo nekehanga o ngā horopaki.

Ka tūhura, ka whakaatu:

- Ψ i ngā tukanga;
  - ⚡ i ngā tūmomo mahi.
- Ka mārama, ka whakaatu whakaaro:
- ⚡ ki ngā tukanga;
  - ⚡ ki ngā tūmomo mahi.

### Toi Puoro

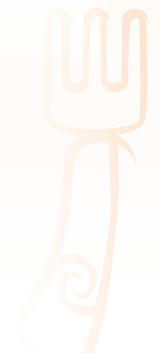


Ka tūhura, ka tito mahi puoro, ka whakamārama, ka whai māramatanga:

- Ψ i ētahi tūmomo tohu ōkawa o te puoro;
- ⚡ i ngā tohu puoro me ngā tuhi ōkawa i roto i ngā titonga puoro;
- ⚡ ki ngā tohu me ngā taputapu puoro.

Ka tūhura, ka whakauru hangarau, ka whakawhanake, ka tautohu:

- Ψ i ngā tūmomo mahi puoro e rata ana ia;
- ⚡ i ōna mōhio ki te ia o te puoro;
- ⚡ i ngā rerekētanga o ngā oro waiata me ngā tūmomo taonga puoro.



## TAUMATA 5

## TAUMATA 6

### Ariā Matua

Hei whakawhanake i ngā tūmomo tukanga me ōna mōhio ki te huhua o ngā āhuatanga toi, i āna ake mahi toi me tērā o ētahi atu.

### Toi Ataata



Ka tūhura, ka whakawhanake, ka whai mōhio, ka whai māramatanga:

- ☞ ki te whakawhanake i ngā ariā me ngā mātāpuna o te kaitoi;
- ☞ ki ngā tūāhua whakaawe.

Ka tūhura hōhonu, ka rapu mātāpuna whakahihi, ka tautohu, ka whai māramatanga:

- ☞ i ētahi ariā whakamahi i te hangarau;
- ☞ hei whakamahi tōtika i ngā taputapu hei whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro;
- ☞ ki te kunenga me te tūhuratanga a ngā kaitoi.

### Ngā Mahi a te Rēhia



Ka tūhura, ka whakamahi, ka whakaatu:

- ☞ i te mokowā me te hangarau;
- ☞ i ōna māramatanga ki te mokowā me te hangarau;
- ☞ i ōna mōhio ki te mokowā me te hangarau.

Ka tūhura, ka whakamahi, ka whakawhanake mōhio, ka whakamārama:

- ☞☞☞☞ i tā te tinana me te reo whakatau i roto i ngā horopaki huhua.

### Toi Puoro



Ka tūhura, ka whakataurite, ka whakaatu:

- ☞ i ngā whānuitanga o te puoro;
- ☞ i roto hoki i te whakatangitangi puoro takitahi, takitini rānei;
- ☞ i ōna rangona puoro, māramatanga puoro.

Ka tūhura, ka hanga, ka hanga ariā, ka whakaatu:

- ☞☞☞☞ i ngā horopaki o ngā tūmomo puoro me ētahi mahi e hāngai pū ana ki aua horopaki.

## TAUMATA 7

## TAUMATA 8

### Ariā Matua

Hei tātari, hei whakaputa i ōna ake ariā, ki te whai ao ki te ao mārama.

### Toi Ataata



Ka whakawhanake ariā, ka whakamahi, ka whai māramatanga, ka whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro hōhonu:

- ☞ e whakaata mai ana i tōna ūnga ki te whakaputa whakaaro;
- ☞ i ōna pūkenga hei hanga, hei whakawhanake, hei whakawhānui;
- ☞ ki te tūāhua mahi.

Ka whakawhanake ariā, ka tīpako rawa tā, ka whai whakaaro maioha, ka whai māramatanga, ka tau hoki ngā whakaaro:

- ☞ ki tana tūmomo mahi;
- ☞ ki te huhua o ngā huarahi mahi.

### Ngā Mahi a te Rēhia



Ka tūhura, ka whakamahi, ka whakaatu:

- ☞ i te mokowā me te hangarau;
- ☞ i ōna māramatanga ki te mokowā me te hangarau;
- ☞ i ōna mōhiotanga ki te mokowā me te hangarau.

Ka tūhura, ka whakamahi, ka whakawhanake mōhio, ka whakamārama:

- ☞ i tā te tinana me te reo whakatau i roto i ngā horopaki huhua.

### Toi Puoro

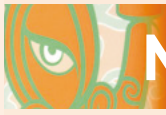


Ka tūhura, ka whakahaere rangahau, ka whakamātau, ka whakaputa whakaaro:

- ☞ i ōna ake tūmanakotanga i roto i te puoro, mō ngā mahi puoro hoki;
- ☞ ki āna mahi puoro i runga i te mōhio.

Ka tūhura, ka whakaatu mai, ka aromātai whānui:

- ☞ i ngā huarahi whakamātau;
- ☞ i ōna pūkenga puoro, i āna mahi puoro;
- ☞ i runga i tōna matatau, hei whakamātautanga mā te whakaminenga whānui.



# NGĀ TOI

# KUPU TAKA

āhuatanga toi	<i>art technique</i>	ūngeri	<i>rhythm</i>
ao māori	<i>natural environment</i>	whakaari	<i>drama</i>
ariā	<i>theory; idea</i>	whakaata	<i>reflect</i>
auaha	<i>creative</i>	whakaawe	<i>influence</i>
horopaki	<i>context</i>	whakahihiri	<i>motivate</i>
huānga	<i>element (arts)</i>	whakakoi	<i>sharpen; improve</i>
huapai	<i>positive (outcome)</i>	whakamātau	<i>test; experiment</i>
kaitoi	<i>artist</i>	whakaniko	<i>enhance</i>
kounga	<i>quality</i>	whakarerekē	<i>alter</i>
kunenga	<i>evolution</i>	whakatangitangi	<i>musical instrument</i>
maioha	<i>appreciation</i>	whakauru	<i>insert; include</i>
mokowā	<i>space, spatial</i>	wheako	<i>experience</i>
mātāpuna	<i>source</i>		
matatau	<i>proficient</i>		
nanao	<i>use</i>		
ngā mahi a te rēhia	<i>performance arts; performing arts</i>		
oro	<i>sound</i>		
papanga	<i>materials</i>		
paparua	<i>copy; replicate</i>		
pohewatanga	<i>imagination</i>		
pūkenga	<i>skill</i>		
pūkenga puoro	<i>musicianship</i>		
puoro	<i>music; sound</i>		
rawa	<i>resource (materials)</i>		
raweke	<i>manipulate</i>		
taputapu	<i>tool, instrument</i>		
tātari	<i>analyse</i>		
tāwhai	<i>imitate</i>		
tito	<i>write; compose</i>		
titonga puoro	<i>instrumental composition</i>		
tohu	<i>symbol</i>		
tohu ōkawa	<i>formal notation (music)</i>		
toi ataata	<i>visual arts</i>		
tokonga whakaaro	<i>thinking (of a group)</i>		
tūhura	<i>explore</i>		

# Pūtaiao



## *Nā Rangī tāua, nā Tū-ā-nuku e takoto nei Ko ahau tēnei, ko mea a mea*

Ko te mātauranga pūtaiao i hua mai i te tangata: i ahu mai i ngā ahurea katoa, ā, nō ngā ahurea katoa hoki. Ko te pūtaiao he mātauranga e pā ana ki te ao tūroa me te wāhanga ki te tangata i roto i taua ao tūroa. Ka whakamātau whakaaro hāngai ki ngā wheako tairongo o te ao; he mātauranga hangore, ka tūpono hē, e taea te whakahou.

Ka whai tikanga te mātauranga pūtaiao i roto i ngā tūmomo hangarau maha o te ao tangata. Mā te pūtaiao ka anga whakamua te ao Māori. Ka whakahuihuitia ngā whakaaro o neherā, tae noa mai ki ngā whakaaro o ēnei rā, kia puta he mātauranga hou, arā, kia whānui ake te puna mātauranga.

Ka whakamanahia ngā tikanga arohaehae mai i te tirohanga Māori. Ka mau haere te ākongā i āna ake 'kete', arā, i āna ake tirohanga, ki te mātauranga, hei tūāpapa mō tāna ako i ngā tirohanga a ahurea kē.

### **Te Whaitake o te Ako i te Pūtaiao**

Ka mātau te ākongā ki ngā pūkenga rangahau, ki te whakamātau, ki te tūhura, ki te whakaoti rapanga. Heoi anō, me mataara tonu te titiro ki ngā putanga mai o te pūtaiao i te ao. Ka pakari te ākongā ki te reo pūtaiao, ki te rongō ā-tinana, ā-wairua, ā-hinengaro. Me puare ki a ia ngā huarahi hei whakatutuki i ngā taumata mahi o te ao pūtaiao, engari kia pūmau tōna ngākau ki te taiao puta noa. Me rongō tonu te whatumanawa ki ngā nawe o tōna ao, kia kitea ai ngā huarahi hei whakatikatika.

### **Te Hanga o tēnei Wāhanga Ako**

E whā ngā whenu o te Pūtaiao, ko Te Ao Tūroa, ko Ō Ahupūngao, ko Ō Kawekawe, ko Ngā Tautake Pūtaiao me ngā Kōrero o Mua. I tua atu i ērā, e toru ngā āhuatanga whānui o te Pūtaiao, arā, ko Ngā Momo Tūhuratanga, ko Te Reo Matatini o te Pūtaiao, ko Ngā Whakamahinga o te Pūtaiao. E kōtui ana ngā āhuatanga nei ki roto i ngā whenu.





# PŪTAIAO

**Te Ao Tūroa** Ko tēnei te whenu tino nui. Kei roto i Te Ao Tūroa ngā tini aitanga, arā, a te tangata, a te tipu, a te kīrehe, a te ngārara, me ērā atu. Ka noho ngā rōpū atua hei kaitiaki o tēnei whenu, he raupapa Māori hei whakarārangi, hei whakamārama i te ao tūroa me te whanaungatanga i waenganui i ngā mea ora katoa. Mā tēnei whenu ka mōhiotia he mana tō te mauri o ngā mea katoa e kitea ana, e kaingia ana, e whakamahia ana e te tangata. E whā ngā wāhanga, ko Te Rauropi, ko Te Taiao, ko Papatūānuku, ko Ranginui.

**Ō Ahupūngao** Kei roto i tēnei whenu ngā pūtaka whakahaere i ngā āhuetanga o te ao tūroa, puta noa ki te ao mutunga kore. E tū tāwhiowhio ana a Tāwhirimātea hei kaitiaki o tēnei whenu. E toru ngā wāhanga, ko Te Tōpana me te Nekenga, ko Te Ngaru me te Ngotangota, ko Te Hiko me te Autō.

**Ō Kawekawe** Kei roto i tēnei whenu ngā matū tino taketake e hangaia ai te ao tūroa, mai i te noke ki te whetū. E tū mataara ana a Rūaumoko hei kaitiaki o tēnei whenu. E toru ngā wāhanga, ko Ngā Āhuetanga me ngā Panoni Pūmatū, ko Te Whakamahi Pūmatū, ko Te Hanga Pūmatū.

**Ngā Tautake Pūtaiao me ngā Kōrero o Mua** Mā tēnei whenu, ka tirohia te pūtaiao hei pūnaha mātauranga, me te whakahāngai a te ākongā i te mātauranga pūtaiao ki tōna ake ao. E whā katoa ngā whāinga paetae o tēnei whenu.





**Ngā Momo Tūhuratanga** Ka oti te whakarōpū me te tautohu, te torotoro, te rapu tauira me te whakatauirā, te whakamātau tika, te whakaoti rapanga, te hanga i tētahi mea, i tētahi pūnaha rānei.

**Te Reo Matatini o te Pūtaiao** Ka pakari haere te mōhio ki te reo matatini o te pūtaiao, o te pāngarau, me ngā pūnaha tohu pūtaiao, ā, ka whakamahia ēnei reo matatini hei pānui, hei whakaatu i ōna ake whakaaro, tae atu ki ō ētahi atu.

**Te Whakamahinga o te Pūtaiao** Ka ako mō ngā mahi me ngā kaimahi e whakaputaina ai ngā mātauranga pūtaiao. Ka whakahāngai i tōna mōhio pūtaiao ki ngā whakatau me ngā mahi o te ao tangata, arā, hei whakaaro ki ngā take ā-iwi, me ngā take whānui, e pā ana ki te tangata, te porihanga me te taiao.

Te Ao Tūroa	Ō Ahupūngao	Ō Kawekawe
<p><b>Te Rauropi</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka mārama haere ki ngā tukanga koiora i roto i ngā rauropi katoa.</li> <li>2. Ka mōhio ka roa e puta ana ngā tukanga kukuwhatanga, e rerekē ai te puna ira o ngā momo koiora.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Taiao</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Ka mārama haere ki ngā momo koiora maha a Papatūānuku; me ngā pāhekoheko o te rauropi ki te rauropi, ā, ki te taiao whānui hoki.</li> </ol> <p><b>Papatūānuku</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Ka mārama haere ki ngā hurihanga me ngā pūnaha a Papatūānuku, ngā hono me ngā pāhekoheko.</li> </ol> <p><b>Ranginui</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Ka mārama haere ki ngā hurihanga me ngā pāhekoheko o ngā ao ātea, mai i tēnei ao, tae noa ki ngā whetū.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Te Tōpana me te Nekenga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka mārama haere ki te tōpana me te nekenga, me te ako i ngā pūngao me ngā pāhekoheko e hāngai ana.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Ngaru me te Ngotangota</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka mārama haere ki te pōkākā, te aho, te oro, me ngā āhuatanga ngota, mā te ako i ngā huatau ngaru, ngotangota hoki, me ngā pūngao e hāngai ana.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Hiko me te Autō</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Ka mārama haere ki te hiko me te autō, me te ako i ngā pūngao me ngā pāhekoheko e hāngai ana.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Ngā Āhuatanga me ngā Panoni Matū</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka mārama haere ki ngā āhuatanga me ngā tukanga e panoni ai te matū, tae atu ki ngā tauhohe.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Whakamahi Pūmatū</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka mārama haere ki ngā whakamahinga o te mātai matū, hei whakautu i ngā hiahia o te tangata.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Hanga Matū</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Ka whakamahi i ngā tauira me ngā pūnaha tohu hei whakaatu i te hanga korakora o te matū.</li> </ol>
<b>Ngā Tautake Pūtaiao Me Ngā Kōrero o Mua</b>		

Ka ako haere mō te pūnaha mātauranga o te pūtaiao, arā:

- ōna huarahi whakatipu, me te wāhi ki ngā ariā me ngā huatau matua, ngā uara ā-hinengaro me ngā uara ā-wairua;
- ngā tautake pūtaiao o ēnei rā, me ngā tautake tuku iho, e pā ana ki te ao tūroa;
- ngā pānga o te mātauranga pūtaiao ki te tangata, te ao tangata, me te taiao.

Mā ēnei akoranga, ka pakari ngā pūkenga arohaehae, hei āta whakawā i te ao pūtaiao, mai i tāna ake tirohanga.





**Ngā Momo Tūhuratanga** Ka oti te whakarōpū me te tautohu, te torotoro, te rapu tauira me te whakatauirā, te whakamātau tika, te whakaoti rapanga, te hanga i tētahi mea, i tētahi pūnaha rānei.

**Te Reo Matatini o te Pūtaiao** Ka pakari haere te mōhio ki te reo matatini o te pūtaiao, o te pāngarau, me ngā pūnaha tohu pūtaiao, ā, ka whakamahia ēnei reo matatini hei whakaatu i ōna ake whakaaro, tae atu ki ō ētahi atu.

**Te Whakamahinga o te Pūtaiao** Ka ako mō ngā mahi me ngā kaimahi e whakaputaina ai ngā mātauranga pūtaiao. Ka whakahāngai i tōna mōhio pūtaiao ki ngā whakatau me ngā mahi o te ao tangata, arā, hei whakaaro ki ngā take ā-iwi, me ngā take whānui, e pā ana ki te tangata, te porihanga me te taiao.

Te Ao Tūroa	Ō Ahupūngao	Ō Kawekawe
<p><b>Te Rauropi</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka ako haere ko ētahi hiahiatanga kei ngā mea oreore katoa, kia noho ora ai.</li> <li>2. Ka whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro mō ngā mea oreore, ka whakarōpū i runga i ngā rerekētanga.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Taiao</b></p> <p>3(i) Ka ako mō ngā kīrehe korehāhā, nō nehe rā anō i ora ai.</p> <p>3(ii) Ka mārama haere ki ngā āhuetanga o ia mea oreore e rite ana kia whai orange ai ia i tōna ake wāhi noho.</p> <p><b>Papatūānuku</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Ka ako haere me pēhea te rū whenua me te puia e huri ai i te āhua o te takiwā, me ngā pānga ki te maunga, ki te awa hoki.</li> </ol> <p><b>Ranginui</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Ka whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro mō Tama-nui-te-rā me te Marama, me ngā pānga ki a Papatūānuku.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Te Tōpana me te Nekenga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka torotoro me te whai wāhi atu ki te nekenga, te mānu, te pana, me te tō.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Ngaru me te Ngotangota</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka torotoro me te whai wāhi atu ki te aho, te ātārangi, te kano, te hanga oro, me te pōkākā.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Ngā Āhuetanga me ngā Panoni Matū</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka mātakitaki me te whakamārama i ngā āhuetanga nui, pēnei i te tae, i te kakano, i te rongo, o ngā matū e mōhio whānuitia ana, me ngā panoni e puta mai i te ranu, i te whakawera, i te whakamātau rānei i te matū.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Whakamahi Pūmatū</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka ako haere i ngā whakamahinga o ngā matū e mōhio whānuitia ana, me te hono ki ngā āhuetanga e kitea ana.</li> </ol>





**Ngā Momo Tūhuratanga** Ka oti te whakarōpū me te tautohu, te torotoro, te rapu tauira me te whakatauiria, te whakamātau tika, te whakaoti rapanga, te hanga i tētahi mea, i tētahi pūnaha rānei.

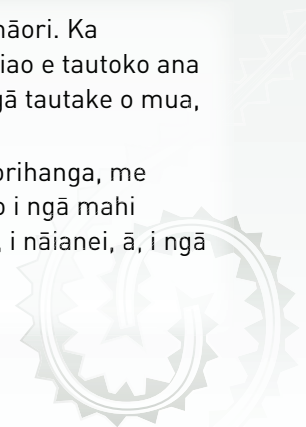
**Te Reo Matatini o te Pūtaiao** Ka pakari haere te mōhio ki te reo matatini o te pūtaiao, o te pāngarau, me ngā pūnaha tohu pūtaiao, ā, ka whakamahia ēnei reo matatini hei pānui, hei whakaatu i ōna ake whakaaro, tae atu ki ō ētahi atu.

**Te Whakamahinga o te Pūtaiao** Ka ako mō ngā mahi me ngā kaimahi e whakaputaina ai ngā mātauranga pūtaiao. Ka whakahāngai i tōna mōhio pūtaiao ki ngā whakatau me ngā mahi o te ao tangata, arā, hei whakaaro ki ngā take ā-iwi, me ngā take whānui, e pā ana ki te tangata, te porihanga me te taiao.

Te Ao Tūroa	Ō Ahupūngao	Ō Kawekawe
<p><b>Te Rauropi</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka ako haere i ngā āhukatanga motuhake o ngā rauropi e whai oranga ai tēnā me tēnā.</li> <li>2. Ka whakarōpū whānui ā-pūtaiao i ētahi rauropi.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Taiao</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Ka mārama e rite ana te rauropi mō tōna wāhi noho, ā, tērā ka raru te rauropi ina rerekē taua wāhi noho.</li> </ol> <p><b>Papatūānuku</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4(i)Ka ako haere i ngā pūtaka o ngā āhukatanga ā-nuku o te takiwā, tae atu ki ngā tāpui wai.</li> <li>4(ii)Ka ako haere mō te āta titiro, te tuhi me te matapae i te huarere.</li> </ol> <p><b>Ranginui</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Ka āta tirotiro ki a Tama-nui-te-rā, te Marama, me ngā aorangi e kitea ā-kanohi, ā, ka ako haere i te whānau a Tama-nui-te-rā, te amiorangi horihori me te haere ki te ātea.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Te Tōpana me te Nekenga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka torotoro, ka whai wāhi atu ki ngā tītohunga ā-rongo o te nekenga me te rere.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Ngaru me te Ngotangota</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka torotoro, ka whai wāhi atu ki ngā tītohunga ā-rongo o te hanga i ngā orotahi me ngā hā o te oro, te kawē me te ārai pōkākā.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Hiko me te Autō</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Ka torotoro, ka whai wāhi atu ki ngā tītohunga ā-rongo o ngā ara iahiko māmā me ngā autō.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Ngā Āhukatanga me ngā Panoni Matū</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1(i) Ka whakarōpū i ngā matū e mōhio whānuitia ana mā te mātakitaki me te ine i ngā āhukatanga ōkiko, kawekawe hoki, pēnei i te āhua-matū, te kiato, me te mehamehanga.</li> <li>1(ii)Ka tautohu, ka whakarite i ngā panoni pūmau me ngā panoni rangitahi o ētahi matū.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Whakamahi Pūmatū</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka whakahāngai i ngā āhukatanga ōkiko, kawekawe hoki o ētahi tūmomo matū ki te whakamahinga hangarau, ki te tukanga māori rānei.</li> </ol>

## Ngā Tautake Pūtaiao Me Ngā Kōrero o Mua

1. Ka ako haere i ngā kōrero tūturu e whakamārama ana i ētahi āhukatanga o te ao māori. Ka whakatairite kōrero mai i ngā tirohanga a iwi kē. Ka tautohu i te mātauranga pūtaiao e tautoko ana i aua kōrero, ka torotoro hoki i te wāhi e pā ana ki te horopaki ahurea tūturu, ki ngā tautake o mua, ngā mātātika me ngā pūnaha uara.
2. Ka whakapakari māramatanga mō ngā hononga i waenganui i te pūtaiao me te porihanga, me ngā tukanga e tupu ngātahi ai. Ka kite i te wāhi ki te pūtaiao me te hangarau i roto i ngā mahi porihanga e whai pānga ana ki ngā tāngata whenua me ngā hauropi māori, i mua, i nāiane, ā, i ngā rā anō pea e heke mai ana.





# PŪTAIAO

Ngā Momo Tūhuratanga Ka oti te whakarōpū me te tautohu, te torotoro, te rapu tauira me te whakatauirā, te whakamatau tika, te whakaoti rapanga, te hanga i tētahi mea, i tētahi pūnaha rānei.

# TAUMATA 4

TE AKA

**Te Reo Matatini o te Pūtaiao** Ka pakari haere te mōhio ki te reo matatini o te pūtaiao, o te pāngarau, me ngā pūnaha tohu pūtaiao, ā, ka whakamahia ēnei reo matatini hei pānui, hei whakaatu i ōna ake whakaaro, tae atu ki ō ētahi atu.

**Te Whakamahinga o te Pūtaiao** Ka ako mō ngā mahi me ngā kaimahi e whakaputaina ai ngā mātauranga pūtaiao. Ka whakahāngai i tōna mōhio pūtaiao ki ngā whakatau me ngā mahi o te ao tangata, arā, hei whakaaro ki ngā take ā-iwi, me ngā take whānui, e pā ana ki te tangata, te porihanga me te taiao.

## Te Ao Tūroa

### Te Rauropi

1. Ka āhukahuka ki ngā tukanga koiora kei ngā rauropi katoa, me te mōhio anō he rerekē aua tukanga i ngā momo rerekē.
2. Ka whakarōpū whāiti ā-pūtaiao i ētahi rauropi.

### Te Taiao

3. Ka āhukahuka, ka whakamārama i ngā panoni o ngā momo koiora (me ngā mea motuhake o Aotearoa), o neherā tae noa ki tēnei wā.

### Papatūānuku

- 4(i) Ka mārama haere ki ngā āhuratanga nui o te mata o Papatūānuku, arā, te wai, te toka, te one, me ngā āhuratanga e taea ai te ora i reira.
- 4(ii) Ka mārama haere ki te hurihanga wai me ōna pānga ki te āhuarangi, ki āhua o te whenua, me te koiora.

### Ranginui

5. Ka ako haere i ngā wāhanga o te whānau a Tama-nui-te-rā, tae atu ki ngā aorangi me ō rātou marama, e mārama haere ai ki ngā tawhiti, ki ngā āhuratanga hoki e pā ana ki te toro ātea.

## Ō Ahupūngao

### Te Tōpana me te Nekenga

1. Ka tūhura, ka whakamahi i te tauira pūtaiao hei whakaatu i te tōpana me te nekenga, me ētahi whakamahinga, pēnei i te waku, te kauwhiti me te tauru.

### Te Ngaru me te Ngotangota

2. Ka tūhura, ka whakamahi i te tauira pūtaiao hei whakaatu i te aho, te oro me te pōkākā.

### Te Hiko me te Autō

3. Ka tūhura, ka whakamahi i ngā tauira pūtaiao māmā mō ngā ara iahiko me ngā autō.

## Ō Kawekawe

### Ngā Āhuratanga me ngā Panoni Matū

- 1(i) Ka whakarōpū i ētahi matū mā te mātakitaki me te ine i ngā āhuratanga ōkiko, kawekawe hoki, pēnei i te kawehiko, te kawepōkākā, me te waikawatanga.
- 1(ii) Ka tūhura i ngā panoni pūmau me ngā panoni rangitahi o ētahi matū, tae atu ki te tauhohe matū o te waikuratanga.

### Te Whakamahi Pūmatū

2. Ka whakahāngai i ngā āhuratanga ōkiko, kawekawe hoki o ētahi tūmomo matū ki te whakamahinga hangarau, ki te tukanga māori rānei.

### Te Hanga Matū

3. Ka ako haere i te āhua korakora o te matū hei whakamārama i ngā panoni matū e kitea ana.

## Ngā Tautake Pūtaiao Me Ngā Kōrero o Mua

1. Ka ako haere i ngā kōrero tūturu e whakamārama ana i ētahi āhuratanga o te ao māori. Ka whakatairite kōrero mai i ngā tirohanga a iwi kē. Ka tautohu i te mātauranga pūtaiao e tautoko ana i aua kōrero, ka torotoro hoki i te wāhi e pā ana ki te horopaki ahurea tūturu, ki ngā tautake o mua, ngā mātātika me ngā pūnaha uara.
2. Ka whakapakari māramatanga mō ngā hononga i waenganui i te pūtaiao me te porihanga, me ngā tukanga e tupu ngātahi ai. Ka kite i te wāhi ki te pūtaiao me te hangarau i roto i ngā mahi porihanga e whai pānga ana ki ngā tāngata whenua me ngā hauropi māori, i mua, i nāiane, ā, i ngā rā anō pea e heke mai ana.





**Ngā Momo Tūhuratanga** Ka oti te whakarōpū me te tautohu, te torotoro, te rapu tauira me te whakatauiria, te whakamātau tika, te whakaoti rapanga, te hanga i tētahi mea, i tētahi pūnaha rānei.

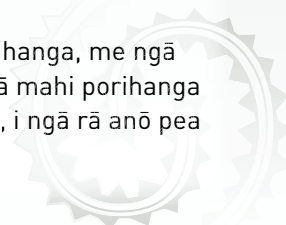
**Te Reo Matatini o te Pūtaiao** Ka pakari haere te mōhio ki te reo matatini o te pūtaiao, o te pāngarau, me ngā pūnaha tohu pūtaiao, ā, ka whakamahia ēnei reo matatini hei pānui, hei whakaatu i ōna ake whakaaro, tae atu ki ō ētahi atu.

**Te Whakamahinga o te Pūtaiao** Ka ako mō ngā mahi me ngā kaimahi e whakaputaina ai ngā mātauranga pūtaiao. Ka whakahāngai i tōna mōhio pūtaiao ki ngā whakatau me ngā mahi o te ao tangata, arā, hei whakaaro ki ngā take ā-iwi, me ngā take whānui, e pā ana ki te tangata, te porihanga me te taiao.

Te Ao Tūroa	Ō Ahupūngao	Ō Kawekawe
<p><b>Te Rauropi</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka tautohu i ngā hanga me ngā mahi o ngā tukanga koiora i te tipu, i te kīrehe, ā, ka whakaahua i ngā whakahaere o te pūtau.</li> <li>2. Ka whakaahua i ngā tukanga koiora e pā ana ki te whakaputa uri, te iranga, me te tukunga iho ā-ira.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Taiao</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Ka tūhura i ngā hononga hauropi o te rauropi ki te rauropi (hei tauira, ko te raupapa me te māwhaiwhai kame), ki te taiao whānui hoki.</li> </ol> <p><b>Papatūānuku</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Ka tūhura i te hanga, te hanganga, me ngā āhuetanga o Papatūānuku, o te kōhauhau hoki, me ngā pānga o tā te tangata mahi.</li> </ol> <p><b>Ranginui</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Ka tūhura, ka whakatauiria i ngā hurihanga e ahu mai ana i ngā pāhekoheko a Papatūānuku ki te Marama me Tama-nui-te-rā, pēnei i ngā āraitanga, i ngā tai, i ngā wāhanga o te tau.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Te Tōpana me te Nekenga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka tūhura kia mārama haere ki te tōpana, te tere, te wā, te ānga, te pūngao neke me te pūngao moe, me te pūmau o te pūngao e hāngai ana.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Ngaru me te Ngotangota</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka tūhura kia mārama haere ki te whakaata me te hakoko o te aho, te pōkākā me te paemahana, tae atu ki te pūmau o te pūngao e hāngai ana.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Hiko me te Autō</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Ka tūhura kia mārama haere ki ngā ara iahiko māmā, te autōhiko me te hiko tū, tae atu ki te pūmau o te pūngao e hāngai ana.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Ngā Āhuetanga me ngā Panoni Matū</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1(i) Ka tūhura i ngā āhuetanga o ētahi rōpū pūmatū, hei tauira, te waikawa me te pāpāhua, te konganuku me te kora, tae atu ki te tauhohe ngingiha.</li> <li>1(ii) Ka mōhio ki te rerekētanga o te pūmatū urutapu me te ranunga, o te pūmotu me te pūhui.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Whakamahi Pūmatū</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka whakahāngai i ngā āhuetanga o ētahi rōpū pūmatū ki ngā whakamahinga i te porihanga, ki ngā āhua māori rānei.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Hanga Matū</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3(i) Ka whakaahua i te hanga o te ngota o ētahi pūmotu.</li> <li>3(ii) Ka mōhio ki ngā rerekētanga korakora o te pūmatū urutapu me te ranunga, o te pūmotu me te pūhui.</li> </ol>

## Ngā Tautake Pūtaiao Me Ngā Kōrero o Mua

1. Ka ako haere i ngā kōrero tūturu e whakamārama ana i ētahi āhuetanga o te ao māori. Ka whakatairite kōrero mai i ngā tirohanga a iwi kē. Ka tautohu i te mātauranga pūtaiao e tautoko ana i aua kōrero, ka torotoro hoki i te wāhi e pā ana ki te horopaki ahurea tūturu, ki ngā tautake o mua, ngā mātātika me ngā pūnaha uara.
2. Ka whakapakari māramatanga mō ngā hononga i waenganui i te pūtaiao me te porihanga, me ngā tukanga e tupu ngātahi ai. Ka kite i te wāhi ki te pūtaiao me te hangarau i roto i ngā mahi porihanga e whai pānga ana ki ngā tāngata whenua me ngā hauropi māori, i mua, i nāianeī, ā, i ngā rā anō pea e heke mai ana.





**Ngā Momo Tūhuratanga** Ka oti te whakarōpū me te tautohu, te torotoro, te rapu tauira me te whakatauirā, te whakamātau tika, te whakaoti rapanga, te hanga i tētahi mea, i tētahi pūnaha rānei.

**Te Reo Matatini o te Pūtaiao** Ka pakari haere te mōhio ki te reo matatini o te pūtaiao, o te pāngarau, me ngā pūnaha tohu pūtaiao, ā, ka whakamahia ēnei reo matatini hei pānui, hei whakaatu i ōna ake whakaaro, tae atu ki ō ētahi atu.

**Te Whakamahinga o te Pūtaiao** Ka ako mō ngā mahi me ngā kaimahi e whakaputaina ai ngā mātauranga pūtaiao. Ka whakahāngai i tōna mōhio pūtaiao ki ngā whakatau me ngā mahi o te ao tangata, arā, hei whakaaro ki ngā take ā-iwi, me ngā take whānui, e pā ana ki te tangata, te porihanga me te taiao.

Te Ao Tūroa	Ō Ahupūngao	Ō Kawekawe
<p><b>Te Rauropi</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka whakahāngai i ngā āhuatanga ā-tinana me ngā mahi o te tipu, o te kīrehe, o te moroiti, ki ā rātou tukanga koiora, ā ka tūhura i ngā āhuatanga taiao e pāpā ana ki aua tukanga.</li> <li>2. Ka torotoro tauira e pā ana ki te tukunga iho o ngā āhuatanga ā-ira.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Taiao</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3(i) Ka whakamārama he mea nui te rerekētanga ā-ira i roto i te taiao hurihuri.</li> <li>3(ii) Ka tūhura i te pānga mai o ngā mahi a te tangata, me ngā tukanga māori, ki tētahi pūnaha-hauropi i Aotearoa.</li> </ol> <p><b>Papatūānuku</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4(i) Ka mārama me pēhea te ariā nukupapa me ērā atu tukanga ā-nuku e whakarite ai, e huri ai, i te mata o Papatūānuku.</li> <li>4(ii) Ka tūhura i ngā hurihanga ā-nuku, ā-Tāwhiri, ā-rangi hoki, e whakarerekē ana i ngā āhuatanga whaiora i runga i a Papatūānuku i te takanga o te wā.</li> </ol> <p><b>Ranginui</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Ka whakamārama i ngā tūmomo hangarau (pēnei i ngā tūmomo karu whātata, ngā amiorangi, ngā waka ātea) hei ako haere, hei torotoro i te whānau a Tama-nui-te-rā me te ao tukupū, i ngā hononga mokowā e pāpā mai ana ki a Papatūānuku.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Te Tōpana me te Nekenga</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka tūhura i ngā ia me ngā hononga o te tōpana, te tere, te whakaterere, te tō-ā-papa, te ānga, te mahi, me ngā pūngao, ngā whakamahinga hoki, e hāngai ana.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Ngaru me te Ngotangota</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2(i) Ka tūhura i ngā ia me ngā hononga o te whakawhitinga pūngao pōkākā, te ōpunga, te ārai pōkākā, tae atu ki ngā pūngao, ngā whakamahinga hoki, e hāngai ana.</li> <li>2(ii) Ka ako haere i ngā hautau māmā o te ahupūngao karihi.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Hiko me te Autō</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Ka tūhura i ngā ia me ngā hononga o te hiko tū, o ngā momo ara iahiko, o te autōhiko, tae atu ki ngā pūngao, ngā whakamahinga hoki, e hāngai ana.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Ngā Āhuatanga me ngā Panoni Matū</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1(i) Ka tautohu i ngā tauira me ngā ia o ngā āhuatanga o ētahi rōpū pūmatū, hei tauira, te waikawa me te pāpāhua, ngā konganuku, ngā pūhui konganuku, ngā waiwaro.</li> <li>1(ii) Ka tūhura i ngā āhuatanga e whai pānga ana ki te haere o te tukanga kawekawe.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Whakamahi Pūmatū</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka torotoro i ētahi huarahi hangarau hei whakamahi pūmatū e arohia ai ngā hiahia o te porihanga.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Hanga Matū</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3(i) Ka mōhio ki ngā rerekētanga korakora o te ngota, te rāpoi ngota, me te katote (me uru mai te honohono katote, te honohono ngātahi hoki).</li> <li>3(ii) Ka whakahāngai i te hanganga ngota ki te raupapatanga o te Taka Pūmotu.</li> <li>3(iii) Ka whakamārama, mā te ariā korakora, i ngā āhuatanga e whai pānga ana ki te haere o te tukanga kawekawe.</li> </ol>



### Ngā Tautake Pūtaiao Me Ngā Kōrero o Mua

1. Ka ako i ngā huatau matua me ngā kōrero o mua o te pūtaiao, me ngā wāhi i roto i ngā pou pūtaiao. Ka ako haere e pā ana ki ngā huringa tautake o te pūtaiao e tupu haere ana.
2. Ka mārama haere ki ngā huatau o te tautake o te mātauranga, kia kite ai i ngā uara taketake o te pūtaiao, he rerekē i ērā o te tangata whenua. Ka mārama haere ki ngā tikanga whakahaere o te mātauranga pūtaiao, me te ako i ngā kōrero mō ētahi tauira whakapai, whakakino rānei. Ka tirohia ētahi take porihanga o ēnei rā e pā ana ki ngā matatika pūtaiao, me pēhea hoki e uruparehia ai.





**Ngā Momo Tūhuratanga** Ka oti te whakarōpū me te tautohu, te torotoro, te rapu tauira me te whakatauirā, te whakamātau tika, te whakaoti rapanga, te hanga i tētahi mea, i tētahi pūnaha rānei.

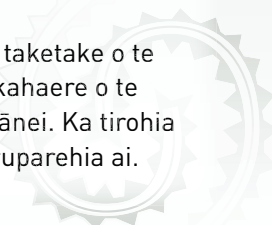
**Te Reo Matatini o te Pūtaiao** Ka pakari haere te mōhio ki te reo matatini o te pūtaiao, o te pāngarau, me ngā pūnaha tohu pūtaiao, ā, ka whakamahia ēnei reo matatini hei pānui, hei whakaatu i ōna ake whakaaro, tae atu ki ō ētahi atu.

**Te Whakamahinga o te Pūtaiao** Ka ako mō ngā mahi me ngā kaimahi e whakaputaina ai ngā mātauranga pūtaiao. Ka whakahāngai i tōna mōhio pūtaiao ki ngā whakatau me ngā mahi o te ao tangata, arā, hei whakaaro ki ngā take ā-iwi, me ngā take whānui, e pā ana ki te tangata, te porihanga me te taiao.

Te Ao Tūroa	Ō Ahupūngao	Ō Kawekawe
<p><b>Te Rauropi</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka torotoro i ngā rerenga tukanga koiora o te tipu, o te kīrehe.</li> <li>2. Ka mārama ki te pāhekoheko o te pītau-ira me te taiao i roto i te whakatinana ira.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Taiao</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3(i) Ka whakamārama me pēhea e puta ai ngā panoni ā-ira ki rō taupori i ngā pāhekoheko o ngā āhuatanga taiao me te whiringa māori.</li> <li>3(ii) Ka torotoro i ngā tauira horahora hauropi, ā, ka whakamārama i ētahi take mō aua tauira.</li> </ol> <p><b>Papatūānuku</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4(i) Ka mārama haere me pēhea te tukanga nukupapa, me ērā atu āhuatanga ā-nuku, e hanga ai, e panoni ai i te mata o Papatūānuku.</li> <li>4(ii) Ka mārama me pēhea e taea ai e ngā mahi a te tangata te whakarerekē i ngā hurihanga e tautoko ana i te ora i runga i a Papatūānuku.</li> </ol> <p><b>Ranginui</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Ka whakamārama i ngā āhuatanga me ngā hurihanga-ora o ētahi tūmomo whetū, tae atu ki ngā panoni pūngao me te wā.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Te Tōpana me te Nekenga, Te Ngaru me te Ngotangota, Te Hiko me te Autō</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) Ka tūhura i ēnei tītohunga ā-rongo ki te whakamārama kounga, tatau hoki, i ētahi pūāhua kāore e mōhio whānuitia ana.</li> <li>(ii) Ka tātari raraunga ki te whakatau i ngā ia, i ngā hononga matatini o ētahi tītohunga ā-rongo.</li> <li>(iii) Ka whakamahi i ngā huatau ahupūngao ki te whakamārama i tētahi whakamahinga hangarau, whakamahinga koiora rānei, o te ahupūngao.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Ngā Āhuatanga me ngā Panoni Matū</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka tūhura, ka ine i ngā āhuatanga kawekawe me te ōkiko o ētahi rōpū pūmatū pēnei i te waikawa me te pāpāhua, me ētahi pūhui whaiwaro, pūhui warokore hoki.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Whakamahi Pūmatū</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka whakamārama i te ao māori mā te mātai matū, ka whakamārama hoki me pēhea e whakamahia ai e te porihanga hei whakaea hiahia, hei whakaoti take, hei whakaputa hoki i te momo hangarau hou.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Hanga Matū</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3(i) Ka mōhio ki te pānga o te hanga me te honohono ki ngā āhuatanga o te pūmatū.</li> <li>3(ii) Ka mārama haere, ka whakamahi i ngā huatau matū taketake (hei tauira, ngā mātāpono taurite) hei whakamārama mātakinga.</li> </ol>

## Ngā Tautake Pūtaiao Me Ngā Kōrero o Mua

1. Ka ako i ngā huatau matua me ngā kōrero o mua o te pūtaiao, me ngā wāhi i roto i ngā pou pūtaiao. Ka ako haere e pā ana ki ngā huringa tautake o te pūtaiao e tupu haere ana.
2. Ka mārama haere ki ngā huatau o te tautake o te mātauranga, kia kite ai i ngā uara taketake o te pūtaiao, he rerekē i ērā o te tangata whenua. Ka mārama haere ki ngā tikanga whakahaere o te mātauranga pūtaiao, me te ako i ngā kōrero mō ētahi tauira whakapai, whakakino rānei. Ka tirohia ētahi take porihanga o ēnei rā e pā ana ki ngā matatika pūtaiao, me pēhea hoki e uruparehia ai.





**Ngā Momo Tūhuratanga** Ka oti te whakarōpū me te tautohu, te torotoro, te rapu tauira me te whakatauirā, te whakamātau tika, te whakaoti rapanga, te hanga i tētahi mea, i tētahi pūnaha rānei.

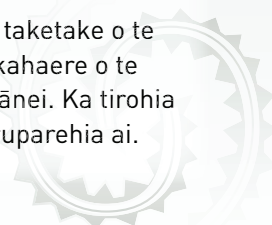
**Te Reo Matatini o te Pūtaiao** Ka pakari haere te mōhio ki te reo matatini o te pūtaiao, o te pāngarau, me ngā pūnaha tohu pūtaiao, ā, ka whakamahia ēnei reo matatini hei pānui, hei whakaatu i ōna ake whakaaro, tae atu ki ō ētahi atu.

**Te Whakamahinga o te Pūtaiao** Ka ako mō ngā mahi me ngā kaimahi e whakaputaina ai ngā mātauranga pūtaiao. Ka whakahāngai i tōna mōhio pūtaiao ki ngā whakatau me ngā mahi o te ao tangata, arā, hei whakaaro ki ngā take ā-iwi, me ngā take whānui, e pā ana ki te tangata, te porihanga me te taiao.

Te Ao Tūroa	Ō Ahupūngao	Ō Kawekawe
<p><b>Te Rauropi</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka tūhura i ngā tukanga kukuwhatanga i puta ake ai te kanorau koiora i runga i a Papatūānuku; ka tiroiro i te wāhanga me te pānga o te tangata i roto i aua tukanga.</li> <li>2. Ka mārama ki te raweke ā-pūtaiao i te whakawhitinga mōhiohio ā-ira, ā, ka hanga whakatau mutunga mārama tonu mō ngā pānga pāpori, matatika, koiora hoki e pā ana ki tēnei mahi.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Taiao</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Ka mārama ki ngā hononga o te rauropi ki tōna taiao.</li> </ol> <p><b>Papatūānuku</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Ka whakawhanake māramatanga ki ngā pāhekoheko, i roto i te wā, o te mahi a te tangata ki ngā hurihanga māori o Papatūānuku.</li> </ol> <p><b>Ranginui</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Ka whakamahi i ngā huatau mō te tawhiti, te wā, me te tō-ā-papa, hei tūhura i ngā tūāhua ā-rangi me ngā mōhiotanga hou mō te ikarangi me te ao tukupū.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Te Tōpana me te Nekenga, Te Ngaru me te Ngotangota, Te Hiko me te Autō</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) Ka tūhura i ēnei tītohunga ā-rongo ki te whakamārama kounga, tatau hoki, i ētahi pūāhua kāhore e mōhio whānuitia ana.</li> <li>(ii) Ka tātari, ka arotake raraunga ki te whakatau i ngā ia, i ngā hononga matatini o ētahi tītohunga ā-rongo.</li> <li>(iii) Ka whakamahi huatau ahupūngao ki te whakamārama i tētahi whakamahinga ā-hangarau, ā-koiora, ā-rangi rānei, o te ahupūngao, me te matapaki i ētahi take e puta ake ana.</li> </ol>	<p><b>Ngā Āhutatanga me ngā Panoni Matū</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ka tūhura, ka ine i ngā āhutatanga kawekawe me te ōkiko o ētahi rōpū pūmatū pēnei i te waikawa me te pāpāhua, me ētahi pūhui whaiwaro, pūhui warokore hoki.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Whakamahi Pūmatū</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Ka whakamārama i te ao māori mā te mātāi matū, ka whakamārama hoki me pēhea e whakamahia ai e te porihanga hei whakaea hiahia, hei whakaoti take, hei whakaputa hoki i te momo hangarau hou.</li> </ol> <p><b>Te Hanga Matū</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3(i) Ka mōhio ki te pānga o te hanga me te honohono ki ngā āhutatanga o te pūmatū.</li> <li>3(ii) Ka mārama haere, ka whakamahi i ngā huatau matū taketake (hei tauira, ngā mātāpono tauritel) hei whakamārama mātakinga.</li> </ol>

## Ngā Tautake Pūtaiao Me Ngā Kōrero o Mua

1. Ka ako i ngā huatau matua me ngā kōrero o mua o te pūtaiao, me ngā wāhi i roto i ngā pou pūtaiao. Ka ako haere e pā ana ki ngā huringa tautake o te pūtaiao e tupu haere ana.
2. Ka mārama haere ki ngā huatau o te tautake o te mātauranga, kia kite ai i ngā uara taketake o te pūtaiao, he rerekē i ērā o te tangata whenua. Ka mārama haere ki ngā tikanga whakahaere o te mātauranga pūtaiao, me te ako i ngā kōrero mō ētahi tauira whakapai, whakakino rānei. Ka tirohia ētahi take porihanga o ēnei rā e pā ana ki ngā matatika pūtaiao, me pēhea hoki e uruparehia ai.





aho	<i>light</i>	kiato	<i>density</i>
āhua-matū	<i>state of matter</i>	kīrehe	<i>animal</i>
ahupūngao karihi	<i>nuclear physics</i>	kōhauhau	<i>atmosphere</i>
ānga	<i>momentum</i>	koiora	<i>biology</i>
ā-nuku	<i>geological</i>	konganuku	<i>metal</i>
ao tukupū	<i>universe</i>	korakora	<i>particle (chemical)</i>
aorangi	<i>planet</i>	korehāhā	<i>extinct</i>
ara iahiko	<i>electrical circuit</i>	kounga (kupu āhua)	<i>qualitative</i>
ārai	<i>insulate</i>	kukuwhatanga	<i>evolution</i>
āraitanga	<i>eclipse</i>	mānu	<i>float</i>
ā-rangi	<i>astronomical</i>	māori	<i>natural</i>
ariā korakora	<i>particle theory</i>	mātakinga	<i>observation</i>
ariā nukupapa	<i>tectonic plate theory</i>	mātātika	<i>ethics</i>
ātārangi	<i>shadow</i>	matū	<i>matter</i>
ā-Tāwhiri	<i>atmospheric</i>	māwhaiwhai kame	<i>food web</i>
autō	<i>magnet(ism)</i>	mehamehanga	<i>solubility</i>
autōhiko	<i>electromagnet(ism)</i>	momo	<i>species</i>
hā (o te oro)	<i>tone (of sound)</i>	moroiiti	<i>micro-organism</i>
hakoko	<i>refract(ion)</i>	nekenga	<i>motion</i>
hangore	<i>flexible</i>	ngaru	<i>wave</i>
hauropi	<i>ecology, ecological</i>	ngota	<i>atom</i>
hiko	<i>electricity</i>	ngotangota	<i>particle (subatomic)</i>
hiko tū	<i>static electricity</i>	ōkiko	<i>physical (i.e. non-chemical)</i>
honohono katote	<i>ionic bonding</i>	ōpunga	<i>heat capacity</i>
honohono ngātahi	<i>covalent bonding</i>	oreore	<i>alive</i>
hononga mokowā	<i>spatial relationship</i>	oro	<i>sound</i>
hurihanga	<i>cycle</i>	orotahi	<i>note (of sound)</i>
hurihanga-ora	<i>life-cycle</i>	paemahana	<i>temperature</i>
ikarangi	<i>galaxy</i>	pana	<i>push</i>
iranga	<i>genetics</i>	panoni	<i>change</i>
kakano	<i>texture</i>	panoni pūmau	<i>permanent change</i>
kanorau koiora	<i>biodiversity</i>	panoni rangitahi	<i>temporary change</i>
katote	<i>ion</i>		
kauwhiti	<i>lever</i>		
kawe	<i>conduct</i>		
kawekawe	<i>chemical</i>		

pāpāhua	<i>base (vs. acid)</i>	taurite	<i>equilibrium</i>
pītau-ira	<i>DNA</i>	tauru	<i>pulley</i>
pōkākā	<i>heat</i>	tautake	<i>philosophy</i>
pūhui	<i>compound</i>	tipu	<i>plant</i>
pūhui konganuku	<i>metal compound</i>	tītohunga ā-rongo	<i>physical phenomenon</i>
puia	<i>volcano</i>	tō	<i>pull</i>
pūmau o te pūngao	<i>conservation of energy</i>	tō ā-papa	<i>gravity</i>
pūmotu	<i>element</i>	tōpana	<i>force</i>
puna ira	<i>gene pool</i>	toro ātea	<i>space exploration</i>
pūnaha	<i>system</i>	tuhi	<i>record</i>
pūnaha mātauranga	<i>knowledge system</i>	tukunga iho	<i>inheritance</i>
pūnaha tohu	<i>symbol system</i>	uara ā-hinengaro	<i>cognitive values</i>
pūnaha-hauropi	<i>ecosystem</i>	uara ā-wairua	<i>moral values</i>
pūngao	<i>energy</i>	urutapu	<i>pure</i>
pūngao moe	<i>potential energy</i>	wāhi noho	<i>habitat</i>
pūngao neke	<i>kinetic energy</i>	waikawa	<i>acid</i>
ranu(nga)	<i>mix(ture)</i>	waikura	<i>rust</i>
rāpoi ngota	<i>molecule</i>	waiwaro	<i>hydrocarbon</i>
raupapa kame	<i>food chain</i>	waku	<i>friction</i>
rauropi	<i>organism</i>	warokore	<i>inorganic (chemical)</i>
rere	<i>flight</i>	whai wāhi atu	<i>to experience</i>
rerekētanga ā-ira	<i>genetic variation</i>	whaiwaro	<i>organic (chemical)</i>
rongo	<i>odour</i>	whakaata	<i>reflect</i>
rū whenua	<i>earthquake</i>	whakamātau tika	<i>fair test</i>
tae	<i>colour</i>	whakaoti rapanga	<i>problem-solving</i>
tahu	<i>burn</i>	whakaputa uri	<i>reproduction</i>
tairongo	<i>sensory</i>	whakatauirā	<i>modelling</i>
Taka Pūmotu	<i>Periodic Table</i>	whakatinana ira	<i>gene expression</i>
tāpui wai	<i>water reserve</i>	whānau a Tama-nui-te-Rā	<i>solar system</i>
tatau (kupu āhua)	<i>quantitative</i>	whiringa māori	<i>natural selection</i>
tauhohe matū	<i>chemical reaction</i>		
tauira	<i>model; pattern</i>		
tauira horahora hauropi	<i>ecological distribution pattern</i>		
taupori	<i>population</i>		

# Hangarau



# HANGARAU

Ko te iho o te hangarau kei te waiata e whai ake nei. Mai i te whakaharatau hangarau a ō tātou tūpuna tae noa ki ngā tukanga hangarau o te ao hurihuri, i whakatakotohia e ō tātou tūpuna he huarahi hei whāinga mā tātou.

*Tikina atu i tuawhakarere  
I te ao kōhatu  
Ngā mōhiotanga o rātou mā  
Hei kawē i a tātou i roto i te ao tūroa  
Kua takoto kē te whāriki i rarangahia e rātou  
Wānangahia, tuakina kia tau  
Rangahaua kia maumahara  
Manakohia kia whiwhi ai  
Te mātauranga Māori motuhake*

Kia tipu ake te kākano hangarau ki ā tātou ākongā, me whakawhiti kōrero, me raweke, me whakamātau kia mau tonu.

## Te Whaitake o te Ako i te Hangarau

Me whaitake ngā kaupapa hangarau kia kore ai e whāia mō te kore noa iho.

Mā te hangarau ka tū rangatira ngā ākongā. Hei whakahiato i ngā mōhiotanga hangarau, ka tīmata i te ao Māori me tōna hāngai ki te ao hurihuri. Me aro anō ki ngā uara, ngā pūkenga, me ngā mōhiotanga hangarau o te ao e taunga ana ia.

## Te Hanga o tēnei Wāhanga Ako

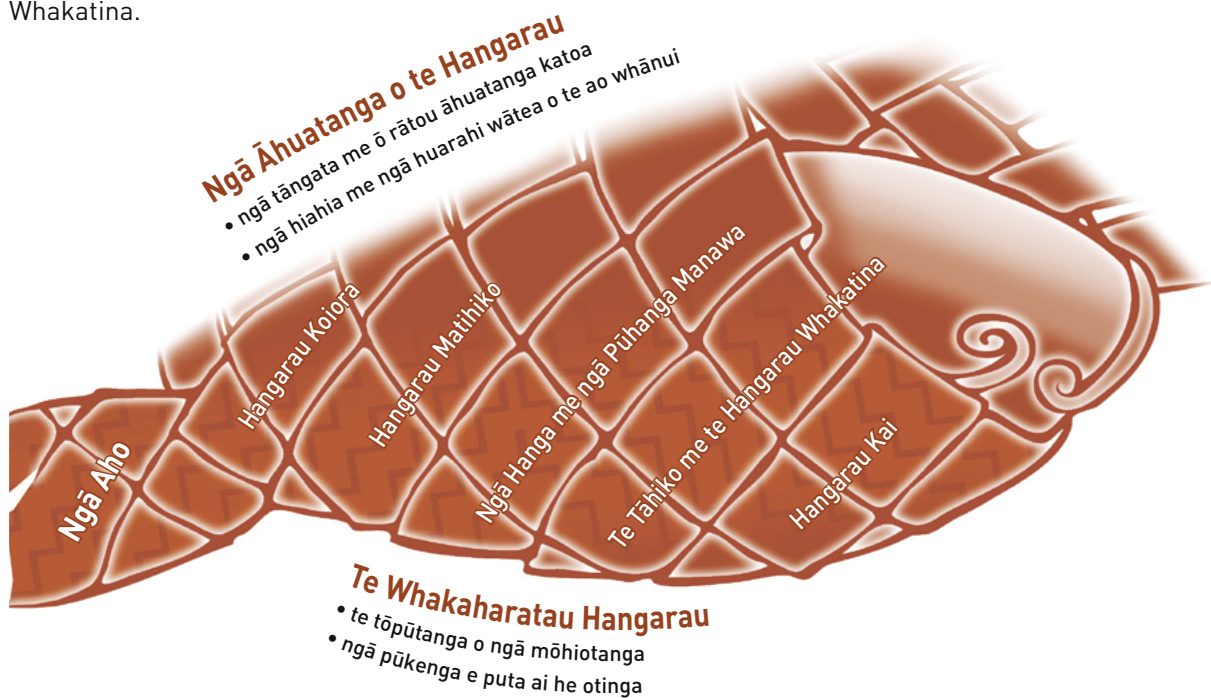
E rua ngā whenu, ko Ngā Āhuetanga Matua o te Hangarau me Te Whakaharatau Hangarau. Kātahi ka taka mai ki ngā aho hangarau e rima. Ko te Hangarau Kai, ko te Hangarau Koiōra, ko Ngā Hanga me ngā Pūhanga Manawa, ko Te Hangarau Matihiko, ko Te Tāhiko me te Hangarau Whakatina.

E tika ana kia tūhuratia ngā āhuetanga o ngā momo matū kei ia kaupapa hangarau. Ā, he wāhi anō mō te āta whakaaro ki te taha hātepe me te taha whakanāo. Kei roto aua wāhanga i te mahere hoahoa a te ākongā.

He rerekē ngā mōhiotanga kei ia whenu. Me hono ngā whenu e rua ki ngā aho kua kōwhiritia hei tūāpapa mō te mahi hangarau.

Mai i te kaupapa whānui ka taka iho ngā aho hei āwhina. Tērā pea e rua, e toru rānei ngā aho e hāngai ana.

Me hāngai te aromatawai ki ngā whāinga kei ngā whenu.



# HANGARAU

## Ngā Āhuetanga o te Hangarau

Ka whakaahuatia te whakaharatau hangarau e:

- ngā tāngata me ō rātou āhuetanga katoa;
- ngā hiahia me ngā huarahi wātea o te ao whānui.

Ka rangahau, ka tūhura ngā ākongā kia mārama ai rātou ki ngā uara me ngā whakapono o te tangata, kia mārama anō ki te pāpātanga o aua āhuetanga ki te whakahiato hangarau.

Ka mōhio ki te tiaki whenua, ki te tiaki taiao, me te pāhekotanga i waenganui i te whakaharatau hangarau me te hapori. Ko te ira atua, ko te ira tangata e noho ngātahi nei te tangata me te whenua.

Me whakaaro ki ngā mahi toitū a ngā tūpuna tae noa mai ki tēnei wā. Me āta titiro ki te pānga o te otinga hangarau ki a Papatūānuku rāua ko Ranginui.

Toitū te whenua, whatungarongaro te tangata. Toitū te whenua, toiora te tangata.

## Te Whakaharatau Hangarau

I roto i tēnei whenua ka pakari haere ngā mōhiotanga me ngā pūkenga hangarau.

Ko te whakaharatau hangarau te tōpūtanga o ngā mōhiotanga me ngā pūkenga e puta ai he otinga.

## Ētahi Pūkenga Hangarau:

- te whakaraupapa i ngā mahi hei hātepe;
- te tautohu i ngā hiahia me ngā huarahi wātea hei painga mō te tangata;
- te arotake i ngā hātepe me te otinga i runga i te aro nui ki te take;
- te tīpako me te whakamahī i ngā mātāpono hangarau;
- ngā pūkenga ā-ringa, ngā pūkenga auaha e puta ai he otinga.

## Ētahi Mōhiotanga Hangarau:

- ngā mahi hangarau a ngā tūpuna tae noa ki ēnei wā;
- te āheinga ki te whakatutuki i tētahi hiahia i runga i te tika;
- kia marama ngā ākongā ki ngā hapori, ki ngā ahurea me ngā tāngata taketake;
- kia marama ngā ākongā ki ngā mātāpono hangarau me te tika o te whakamahī.

Ngā Aho	Hei whakamārama
<b>Hangarau Koiora</b>	Ko tā te hangarau koiora, he whakamahī i ngā pūnaha whai oranga hei raweke i ngā tukanga māori, hei painga mō te tangata. Tērā pea, ko te whakatipu ā-wai, ko te rongoā, ko te tiaki rauropi rānei e tata korehāhā ana. Ka whai wāhi hoki ki te tūhura i ngā tini āhuetanga o te raweke ira.
<b>Hangarau Matihiko</b>	E rua ngā Anga Tupuranga Hangarau Matihiko me ōna whakatupuranga ka taka iho i te aho Hangarau Matihiko: <b>1. Te Tupuranga Whakaaro Rorohiko</b> E waru ōna whakatupuranga e wetewetehia ana ngā whakaaro rorohiko kia whai māramatanga ki ngā rapanga o te papatono rorohiko matatini me ōna momo hātepe, e whaitake ai te waihanga papatono ki te ao tūturu. <b>2. Te Tupuranga Tangata me te Rorohiko</b> E rima ōna whakatupuranga e whakatau ana i ngā tikanga me ngā mātāpono ki te whakahaere tūmahi e tū ai hei kirirarau matihiko.
<b>Ngā Hanga me ngā Pūhanga Manawa</b>	Ka tīmata te hanga ki ngā hanga māmā noa, pērā i te pouaka kawē, ka piki ake ki ngā hanga uaua, pērā i te pā tuna, i te tāwhiti kiore, i te manu aute. Ka mārama ki te hononga me te pānga i waenganui i ngā wāhanga o te hua, me te tino take o ia wāhanga.
<b>Te Tāhiko me te Hangarau Whakatina</b>	Ko te tāhiko te hoahoa, te hanga, me te whakanao i ngā pūnaha hiko me ngā pūrere tāhiko. Ko te hangarau whakatina te whakahaeretanga o ēnei pūnaha pūrere tāhiko.
<b>Hangarau Kai</b>	Ko te hangarau kai, ko ngā āhuetanga katoa o te whakatipu, te hauhake, te tohu, te tunu, te rokiroki me te tākai kai. Ka tūhuratia hoki ngā āhuetanga kawekawe o ngā tūmomo kai hei whakahiato i ētahi atu kai.

## TAUMATA 1

## TAUMATA 2

### Ngā Āhuetanga o te Hangarau

1. Ka tūhura i tō rātou ao, ka titiro ki:
  - ngā whakapono me ngā uara o te tangata;
  - te whakamahi i ngā rawa o te taiao o mua, o nāianei hoki.

1. Ka whakawhitiwhiti kōrero mō te hononga o te tangata me te taiao, arā:
  - ka whakamārama i ngā uara e whakamahia ana e te tangata;
  - ka whakamārama i ngā tikanga o te whakamahi rawa.

### Te Whakaharatau Hangarau

2. Ka tūhura, ka tautohu i:
  - ngā hua hangarau whānui;
  - te take me te whakamahi i ngā momo hua.
3. Ka whakaputa, ka whakatairanga i ōna hiahia hei mahere māmā, arā:
  - te āhua o te hua;
  - ngā rawa;
  - he hātepe kia tīmataria ai te hanga.

2. Ka rangahau, ka whakahiato i ōna hiahia hei mahere. Ka whakaarohia ēnei:
  - he hātepe;
  - ngā mātāpono;
  - ngā momo rawa.
3. Ka whakamātau, ka aromātai i te otinga i runga anō i te āhua o:
  - te hiahia, te huarahi wātea rānei;
  - ngā rawa kua whakamahia;
  - ngā mātāpono.

### Te Tupuranga Whakaaro Rorohiko

**Whakatupuranga 1:** Ko te whakaaro hātepe

**Whakatupuranga 2:** Ko te hanga hātepe

### Te Tupuranga Tangata me te Rorohiko

**Whakatupuranga 1:** Ko te rorohiko hei pupuri kōrero

Ka mārama ko tā te rorohiko he pupuri kōrero, mā te kaiako tētahi mahi whakahiato e ārahi: ki te waihanga; ki te raweke; ki te pupuri; ki te tiki; ki te tuari hoki.



## TAUMATA 3

## TAUMATA 4

### Ngā Āhuratanga o te Hangarau

1. Ka tautohu, ka whakaputa whakaaro e pā ana ki:
  - ngā whakahiatotanga hangarau i roto i ngā wā;
  - ngā whakapono me ngā uara;
  - ngā tikanga ka whakamahia e te tangata.

1. Ka āta whakaaro ki ngā uara me ngā whakapono kua whakamahia, kia mārama ai ngā āhuratanga o te otinga kua puta. Me āta whakaaro ki:
  - ngā mātāpono hangarau;
  - te hāngaitanga ki te tangata;
  - te pāpātanga ki te taiao;
  - te pānga i ngā wā e heke mai nei.
2. Ka mārama ki ngā hua o te whakawhitiwhiti kōrero i waenganui i te hapori me te ao whānui.

### Te Whakaharatau Hangarau

2. Ka whakaraupapatia he mahere hoahoa whaitake.
3. Ka whiriwhiria ngā kōrero e pā ana ki ngā mātāpono ka whakamahia. Tērā ko:
  - te taha rerehua;
  - te whaikiko;
  - te mauroanga;
  - te māiatanga;
  - ngā tikanga haumaruru.
4. Ka whakamātau, ka aromātai i te hoahoa. Ka kōwhiritia tētahi huarahi kia tika rawa.

3. Ka whakamahia he mahere, ka whakamātauria kia kitea:
  - te whanaketanga;
  - te tōtika o te mahi.
4. Ka whakahiatotia ngā pūkenga ā-ringa, ā-hinengaro, taha auaha anō hoki.
5. Ka whakamātauria te hua i runga anō i te āhua o te hiahia me te urupare a ngā kiritaki.
6. Ka mārama ki te whakahaere o ngā pūnaha hangarau.

### Te Tupuranga Whakaaro Rorohiko

#### Whakatupuranga 3: Ko te waihanga papatono rorohiko

Ka whakawhanake i tōna mōhiotanga ki te pūtake o te hātepe hei mahi waihanga papatono rorohiko.

#### Whakatupuranga 4: Ko te waihanga hātepe papatono

Ka wāwāhi rapanga ki te waihanga hātepe mā ngā paparanga papatono e toru, te raupapanga, te kōwhiringa me te whitiauu.

### Te Tupuranga Tangata me te Rorohiko

#### Whakatupuranga 2: Ko te whakatau tikanga pūnaha tūturu

Ka whakatau tikanga ki te waihanga; te raweke; te pupuri; te tiki; te tuari me te whakamātau rānei i te kōrero o tētahi pūnaha tūturu.

## TAUMATA 5

## TAUMATA 6

### Ngā Āhukatanga o te Hangarau

1. Ka whakatairanga i ō rātou ake whakapono, uara rānei hei otinga:
  - mō te whānau, te haporī, te hapū, te iwi rānei, ā, ka tūhura i te pāpātanga ki ētahi atu ahurea, hunga kiritaki hoki.

1. Ka tirohia ngā uara me ngā whakapono o iwi kē, ka:
  - whakahāngai ki te otinga;
  - mōhio ki ngā whakaharatau;
  - whakarite ki ngā hangarau a tangata kē;
  - mārama ki ngā ārai me ngā huarahi wātea ka taea.
2. Ka tūhura i ngā āhukatanga matua o te tangata e pā ana ki:
  - ngā pūnaha, ngā tukanga rānei;
  - te hiahia o ngā kiritaki;
  - ngā rautaki whakatairanga ki te kiritaki.

### Te Whakaharatau Hangarau

2. Ka tātari i ā rātou mahere hoahoa me ngā mahere hoahoa a ērā atu ki te:
  - tautohu i ngā whakatakotoranga pai ake;
  - kōwhiri i ngā rawa e tika ana;
  - whakarite i te hātepe.
3. Ka kimi rautaki hei whakatairanga i ngā otinga kua puta.

3. Ka arohaehae i ngā whakatakotoranga hoahoa whaiaro, ā ētahi atu hoki, hei āwhina.
4. Ka whakamātautau i ngā raraunga me ngā mōhiohio hou kia puta ai he otinga tika.

### Te Tupuranga Whakaaro Rorohiko

**Whakatupuranga 5:** Ko te panoni rapanga hei waihanga papatono  
Ka panoni i tētahi āhua o te rapanga kia mārama ai ki te hātepe o te hangarau matihiko hei mahi waihanga papatono.

**Whakatupuranga 6:** Ko te hātepe pūtaiao rorohiko  
Ka arohaehae, ka whakamārama i te hātepe o te pūtaiao rorohiko hei mahi whakaatu raraunga me te tuhi papatono. Ka aromātai i te whitake ki te ao tūturu.

### Te Tupuranga Tangata me te Rorohiko

**Whakatupuranga 3:** Ko te whakatau tikanga whakaoti hopanga  
Ka whakatau tikanga ki te kawē i ngā mahi whakaoti rapanga mā te whitiauau ki te mahi hoahoa; ki te whakahiato; ki te waihanga; ki te pupuri; ki te whakamātau; ki te arotake kōrero matihiko hoki e tutuki ai tōna pūtake.

**Whakatupuranga 4:** Ko te whakahaere tūmahi  
Ka whakamārama i ngā mātāpono waiwai o te whakahaere tūmahi, ka whai tukanga auau ki te whakatau mahi hoahoa me ngā momo taputapu hangarau matihiko ki te whakahiato; ki te pupuri; ki te whakamātau; ki te arotake kōrero matihiko hoki e tutuki ai tōna pūtake.

## TAUMATA 7

## TAUMATA 8

### Ngā Āhuetanga o te Hangarau

1. Ka tūhura i ngā momo hangarau ka taea te whakarerekē i roto i ngā āhuetanga o te tangata, me ngā rauropi katoa, pērā i:
  - te whakaōrite whaioranga;
  - te raweke ira tangata.
2. Kia mārama ki ngā pāpātanga ki ngā whakapono o te tangata.
3. Ka tūhura, ka tautohe i ngā painga ohaoha o ētahi otinga me te pānga ki:
  - ngā whānau, hapū, iwi rānei;
  - ngā rohe, te motu, te ao whānui hoki.

1. Ka taukumekume i te pāpātanga o te otinga hangarau ki:
  - ngā uara, ngā whakapono, me ngā waiaro;
  - ngā matatika o te tangata;
  - te ao tōrangapū;
  - te toitūtanga;
  - te taha ohaoha.

### Te Whakaharatau Hangarau

4. Ka arohaehae i ngā otinga whaiaro, ā ētahi atu hoki, kia ahu whakamua ai te mahi.
5. Ka aromātai, ka whakamātau i ngā otinga, kia taea ai te whakarerekē, te whakahāngai.
6. Ka kōwhiri i ngā whakatakotoranga kia tika ai te otinga.
7. Ka whakatairanga, ka parahau i ngā otinga i runga anō i te āhua o te hiahia, o te urupare a te kiritaki, a te hāpori whānui hoki.

2. Ka whakawhanake i ngā pūkenga whakahaere mahi kia puta ai he otinga.
3. Ka whakarite rautaki hei whakatairanga i ngā otinga.

### Te Tupuranga Whakaaro Rorohiko

#### Whakatupuranga 7: Ko te whitake o te kōwhiringa raraunga

Ka matapaki, ka mōhio i te whitake o te kōwhiringa raraunga, ko te aromātai i ōna hua, ngā āheinga rokiroki me te tika o te hāngai ki ngā tūmomo hātepe.

#### Whakatupuranga 8: Ko te arohaehae wāhanga pūtaiao rorohiko

Ka arohaehae i ētahi wāhanga o te pūtaiao rorohiko, ka tātari hoki i ngā pānga ki ngā hātepe, ngā whakaaturanga raraunga me ngā mahi waihanga papatono.

Ka whakamahi i ngā pūmanawa rorohiko ki te whakawhanake, ki te tuhi me te whakamātau i tētahi papatono matatini.

### Te Tupuranga Tangata me te Rorohiko

#### Whakatupuranga 5: Ko te tūhura kōwhiriranga umanga hangarau matihiko

Ka tūhura i ngā kōwhiringa whānui o ngā umanga hangarau matihiko i tōna ao, i te motu, i te ao whānui tonu. Ka whakamārama hoki i ngā pānga ki ngā whakatau mahi hoahoa me ngā momo taputapu hangarau matihiko hei mahi aromātai, hei mahi whakawhanake hoki i ngā mātāpono waiwai o te whakahaere tūmahi.

# HANGARAU

# KUPU TAKA

ao tūturu	<i>real world</i>	pūnaha	<i>system</i>
arotake	<i>evaluate</i>	pūhanga manawa	<i>mechanical</i>
arotautanga	<i>optimisation</i>	pūkenga whakahaere mahi	<i>project management skills</i>
auaha	<i>creative, innovative</i>	pūtaiao rorohiko	<i>computer science</i>
hangarau kai	<i>food technology</i>	rauropi	<i>living organism</i>
hangarau koiora	<i>biotechnology</i>	rautaki	<i>strategy</i>
hangarau matihiko	<i>digital technology</i>	rawa	<i>resource, materials</i>
hangarau whakatina	<i>control technology</i>	rawa ora	<i>living material</i>
hapori	<i>community</i>	raweke	<i>manipulate</i>
hātepe	<i>algorithm</i>	rerehua	<i>aesthetics</i>
hinengaro auaha	<i>ingenuity</i>	rokiroki	<i>store (data)</i>
hiranga	<i>excellence, superior</i>	tāhiko	<i>electronics</i>
hātepe	<i>process</i>	tāhiko me te hangarau whakatina	<i>electronics and control technology</i>
hoahoa	<i>design</i>	taukumekume	<i>debate</i>
huarahi wātea	<i>opportunity</i>	tautohu	<i>identify</i>
kiritaki	<i>customer, client</i>	tikanga haumaruru	<i>safety procedures</i>
kirihou	<i>plastic</i>	toitū	<i>lasting; sustainable</i>
kirirarau matihiko	<i>digital citizen</i>	tuari	<i>share</i>
konganuku	<i>metal</i>	tūhura	<i>explore, investigate</i>
korehāhā	<i>extinct</i>	tukanga	<i>process</i>
kōrero matihiko	<i>digital content</i>	tauwhāiti	<i>specific</i>
kōwhiri	<i>select</i>	urupare	<i>feedback, response</i>
kounga	<i>quality</i>	utauta	<i>equipment</i>
koiora	<i>biotechnology</i>	waiwai	<i>basic</i>
māia	<i>confidence</i>	whaiaro	<i>personal</i>
mauroanga	<i>durable</i>	whaikiko	<i>purposeful</i>
matatika	<i>ethics</i>	whai patanga	<i>purposeful, useful</i>
mātau	<i>know, understand</i>	whakaaro rorohiko	<i>computational thinking</i>
matū	<i>materials</i>	whakaharatau hangarau	<i>technological practice</i>
matū waihanga	<i>synthetic</i>	whakahiato	<i>develop</i>
ohaoha	<i>economics</i>	whakatairanga	<i>promote</i>
paparanga	<i>layer</i>	whakataurite	<i>compare</i>
papatono	<i>programme (computer)</i>	whakatupuranga	<i>progression</i>
pāpori	<i>social</i>	whakawhanake	<i>develop</i>
pāpā	<i>impact</i>	whitiauu	<i>iterative, iteration</i>
parahau	<i>justify</i>		
paturopi	<i>antibiotics</i>		

# Te Reo Pākehā





# TE REO PĀKEHĀ

## Te Reo Pākehā *Ko tō ringa ki ngā rākau a te Pākehā hei ora mō te tinana*

Ko tā te wāhanga ako o Te Reo Pākehā he whakaari i te reo Pākehā hei huarahi whakawhiti whakaaro, hei pūkenga whakahoahoa, hei kākahu mō te whakaaro, hei huarahi ki ngā taumata o te mātauranga.

Ka tautoko tēnei wāhanga ako i te reo Māori hei reo matua mō te whakaako i ngā kura rumaki reo Māori. Ko tāna he whakakaha ake, he whakapakari ake hoki i ngā pūkenga reo kua rārangi mai i roto i te wāhanga ako reo Māori. Nō reira, e whai ana tēnei wāhanga ako kia tāpiritia ake te reo Pākehā ki te puna reo o te whakaako me te ako.

Kia tupu ai ngā pūkenga kōrero reo rua, pūkenga matatini reo rua o ngā ākongā, me aro ā tātou mahi whakaako ki te whakawhitinga o ngā pūkenga me te māramatanga, mai i tētahi reo ki tētahi. Ka taea ētahi rautaki te whakawhiti mai i te akoranga a ngā ākongā i te reo Māori. Engari, me āta tohutohu mārire ngā ākongā me pēhea te whakamahi i aua rautaki i te reo Pākehā. Waihoki, ko ngā rautaki ka ākona ki te reo Pākehā, ka taea te whakawhiti ki te reo Māori. Mā konei ka tautoko te wāhanga ako o Te Reo Pākehā i te whakawhitinga atu i te reo Māori ki te reo Pākehā, i te reo Pākehā ki te reo Māori, mā te akiaki i ngā kaiako kia whakanuia te katoa o ngā huinga pūkenga reo o ngā ākongā.

### Te Pūtake o te Ako i te Reo Pākehā

Tērā ō tātou mātua, ō tātou tīpuna e mārāma ana ki ngā painga o te ako i te reo Pākehā hei huarahi ki te ao whānui. Kua tuhia tētahi rārangi o te kōrero rongonui a Tā Āpirana Ngata i runga ake nei. Ko tā Apirana he akiaki i te hunga tamariki kia mau tonu ki ngā taonga tuku iho a ngā tīpuna, arā, ko te reo Māori, ā, ki te whai atu anō hoki i ngā “rākau” a te Pākehā. (Ko te reo Pākehā tētahi o aua “rākau”.)

E rangona tonutia ana tērā akiaki i roto i ngā kōrero a ngā mātua o ēnei rā, ā, e tautoko ana te wāhanga ako o Te Reo Pākehā i te wawata mō ngā tamariki i roto i ngā kura reo Māori, kia matatau ki te kōrero i te reo Māori me te reo Pākehā.

Kia matatau ngā ākongā ki te reo Pākehā:

- kia whai wāhi atu, kia takoha painga hoki ki te ao whānui
- kia pakari ngā pūkenga reo i roto i ngā reo e rua.
- kia whiwhi tohu NCEA mā te reo Pākehā, ki te hiahia rātou
- kia tutuki ētahi atu moemoeā.

### Te Hanga o tēnei Wāhanga Ako

Mō te tino nuinga o ngā ākongā i ngā kura reo Māori, ko te reo Pākehā tētahi o ō rātou reo ā-waha. Nō reira e tautoko atu ana tēnei wāhanga ako Te Reo Pākehā i ēnei mātauranga o te ākongā, ā, ka arahina kia whānui ake ngā pūkenga kua mau kē i a ia. Ko te otinga ake, ka tipu te ākongā hei tangata reo rua.

I roto i ngā mahi o ia rā, ka aro atu ngā ākongā ki ngā āheinga, ki ngā kiwaha me ngā kīrehu o te reo Pākehā i ngā horopaki o ia rā. Ko te reo whakaahei he ingoa e pā ana ki ngā take e kōrero ai tātou i tētahi kōrero, i tētahi momo reo. Ko ētahi o ēnei ko te mihi ki te tangata, ko te hoko taonga, ko te whakarite hui, me te tono i te tangata kia āwhina mai. E hia nei ngā āheinga reo i roto i ngā nekenekehanga o te rā. Ina koa, he rite tonu tā tātou tono āwhina, ina haere ki te hoko taonga.





# TE REO PĀKEHĀ

E eke ai te ākongā ki ngā taumata o te mātauranga, me matatau ia ki te reo o te mātauranga. Mā te ako i ēnei āhuatanga o te reo Pākehā mō te mātauranga, e eke ai te ākongā ki ngā taumata e hiahia ana ia i roto i ngā akoranga o te kura tuarua me te kura tuatoru, pēnei i te whare wānanga, i te kuratini rānei.

Ki te tūhura ngā ākongā i te reo Pākehā mō te whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro me te reo o te mātauranga, ka piki ake ō rātou pūkenga whakarongo, pūkenga kōrero, pūkenga pānui, pūkenga tuhituhi hoki.

## Ngā Wehenga e Ono

E rua ngā wāhanga o te anga o tēnei wāhanga ako. Tuatahi ko te pikinga mā ngā hipanga e toru e kīia nei ko Kaupae 1, Kaupae 2, me Kaupae 3. Ka piki haere tonu tēnei pikinga kia tae ki ngā taumata e toru, ki Taumata 6, 7, me Taumata 8.

Hei ārahi ngā Kaupae e toru i te whanaketanga kaupapa mō te whakaako me te ako i te reo Pākehā, taea noatia te tīmatanga o ngā taumata matua o te kura tuarua. Ka riro mā ngā Taumata 6, 7, me te 8 hei ārahi i te whanaketanga kaupapa mō te whakaako me te ako i te reo Pākehā i ngā taumata o runga rawa o te kura tuarua. Ko ngā Taumata 6, 7, me te taumata 8, he whakamāoritanga kau i ngā taumata taurite o te wāhanga ako reo Pākehā o te *New Zealand Curriculum*.

## Ngā Whenu e Whā o Kaupae 1, 2, me 3

E whā ngā whenu i ngā Kaupae 1, 2, me 3: Te Tino Āhua o te Reo Pākehā; ā-Waha; ā-Tā; ā-Tinana. Hāunga Te Tino Āhua o te Reo Pākehā, he rite tonu ki ērā i te wāhanga ako o Te Reo Māori. Mā tēnei huarahi e tautoko ngā kaiako o te reo Māori me te reo Pākehā kia whakamahere tahi me te ako kia ngāwari ai te whakawhiti i ngā wāhi katoa e taea ai. Ko ngā whenu e whā o tēnei akoranga e whai ake nei.

## Te Tino Āhua o te Reo Pākehā

Ka noho tēnei whenu kōmitimiti i raro i ērā atu whenu e toru. Ka noho tēnei hei waitohunga nui mō ngā kaupapa ako i te reo Pākehā i ngā horopaki rumaki reo Māori. E rua ngā wāhanga o tēnei whenu: Te Ao Māori i roto i te Reo Pākehā, Te Reo Whakawhiti Kōrero me te Reo Kura. Nā te mea kei runga rawa tēnei whenu, he whenu hoki hei ārahi i ngā mahi, he ōrite ōna whāinga paetae i ngā Kaupae e toru katoa.

## ā-Waha – te reo kōrero

Ka kapi katoa i tēnei whenu ngā kōrero ā-waha, ngā pūtake me ngā pūnaha reo, tae atu ki te tāpae i ngā rautaki whai take mō te hunga ako.

## ā-Tā – te reo tuhituhi

Ka kapi katoa i tēnei whenu ngā tuhinga ā-ringa, ngā pūtake me ngā pūnaha reo o aua tuhinga, tae atu ki te tāpae i ngā rautaki whai take mō te pānui me te tuhituhi i roto i te reo Pākehā.

## ā-Tinana – te reo tohu

Ka kapi i tēnei whenu ērā āhuatanga o te reo Pākehā ehara i te reo ā-waha, i te reo tuhituhi rānei. He maha tonu ngā tikanga ka kawea mā tēnei momo reo. He mea tino nui kia eke anō te mōhiotanga o te hunga ako mō te reo tohu ki te taumata, e kīia ai rātou he kaikōrero matatau ki te reo Pākehā.



## Ngā Whāinga Paetae Matua me ngā Whāinga Paetae

Ko tā ngā whāinga paetae e toru he whiriwhiri tahi i ngā whenu reo ā-waha, ā-tuhi, me te reo tohu, kia rere ko te tino āhua torowhānui o tēnei mea te ako i te reo. Ka tīpae aua whāinga e toru i ngā Kaupae e toru katoa.

**Āheinga Reo:** ngā kaupapa e whakamahia ai te reo.

**Puna Reo:** tae atu ki ngā kupu, ki ngā tangi, me te whakatāhuhutanga o te reo.

**Rautaki Reo:** ngā huarahi e āwhinatia ai te ākonga kia mārama ki te reo, kia tika hoki tāna whakawhiti whakaaro.

E wehea ana ēnei aronga whakamaru kia rere he whāinga paetae. Hei tā ēnei, he whakamārama i te tino āhua o te whāinga i ia Kaupae. Kia mahara hoki kei roto i te whāinga whānui kē atu o te whakawhanake rautaki reo tētahi whāinga paetae poto motuhake, kei ia Kaupae, e tautoko ana i te pakari o ngā rautaki whakawhiti pūkenga o te ākonga. Ka kapi ngā whenu e toru, ā-Waha, ā-Tā, ā-Tinana hoki i tēnei whāinga paetae poto.

## Te Hanga o tēnei Wāhanga Ako i ngā Taumata 6, 7, me 8

I ngā taumata pakeke o te kura tuarua, kua whakatāhuhutia te reo Pākehā i runga i ētahi whenu tauawhiawhi e rua. Kei ia whenu ngā āhuatanga ā-waha, ā-tuhi, ā-ataata hoki o te reo. Ka aro kē ngā whenu ki tēnā aratau, ki tēnā aratau, ko te mahi matua a ngā ākonga he:

- whiwhi māramatanga mai i ngā whakaaro, mōhiohio hoki ka tae ki a rātou (**Te Whakarongo, te Pānui, te Mātakitaki**)
- hanga māramatanga mō rātou anō me ētahi atu (**Te Kōrero, te Tuhituhi, te Whakaatu**).

I raro i ngā whāinga paetae poto i roto i ia whenu, ka kitea ngā hipanga ka kakea e te nuinga o ngā ākonga, i te huarahi whakapiki i ō rātou pūkenga ā-waha, ā-kōrero, ā-ataata hoki. Ka whakamahi ngā ākonga i tētahi kāhui tukanga, rautaki hei takere kia whanake ai te mōhiohio, ngā pūkenga me te māramatanga e pā ana ki:

- ngā whāinga o ngā tuhinga me te hunga mā rātou aua tuhinga
- ngā ariā i roto i ngā horopaki reo
- ngā āhuatanga reo hei whakapiki i ngā tuhinga
- te whakatāhuhu me te whakaraupapa i tēnei mea te tuhinga.

Me akoako ngā ākonga kia *whiwhi māramatanga* me te *waihanganga māramatanga* i ia taumata o te marautanga. Ka whakaatatia tēnei hiahia i roto i te whakatāhuhutanga o ngā whāinga paetae poto. I ngā ākonga e ahu whakamua ana ka whakahāngai rātou i ō rātou pūkenga ki ngā taumahi me ngā tuhinga matatini kē atu, uaua kē atu – me te hōhonu haere tonu o ngā mahi.



## Te Hanga o tēnei Wāhanga Ako i ngā Kaupae 1, 2, me 3

### Ngā Āhuatanga o te Ākonga Te Tino Āhua o te Reo Pākehā



ā-Waha



ā-Tā



ā-Tinana

#### Āheinga Reo

Ka pāhekoheko angitu te ākonga i te reo Pākehā mō ngā take huhua noa iho.

#### Puna Reo

Ka mārama, ka whakawhiti angitu te ākonga i te reo Pākehā mā ōna anō mōhiotanga reo.

#### Rautaki Reo

Ka mārama, ka whakamahi, ka whakamahuki hoki i te tōnuitanga o ngā rautaki hei whakangāwari i te akoranga, i te whakawhitiwhiti kōrero.



= whakarongo



= pānui



= mātakitaki



= kōrero



= tuhituhi



= whakaatu





## Ngā Āhuatanga o te Ākonga i te Tomokanga ki Kaupae 1

*Ka puta pea i te ākonga te katoa, te nuinga rānei o ēnei āhuatanga e whai ake nei:*

- te māia ki te reo Pākehā ā-waha, tae atu ki tana mōhio ki ngā kupu e tino whakahuahuatia ana
- te mōhio tanga ki ngā pukapuka me te hanga taketake o tēnei mea te tuhinga
- te māramatanga ki te whanaungatanga o te pūāhua me te oro ki te reo Māori
- te āhei ki te tuhi i te reo Māori me te whakamahi tohutuhi
- tētahi māramatanga o te reo Pākehā tuhi – he māia pea ki te pānui, ki te tuhi rānei/hoki, i ngā tuhinga poto
- ngā pūkenga reo i ngā mahi whāiti tonu e kaingākau ana te ākonga pēnei i ngā tākaro rorohiko.

### Te Tino Āhua o te Reo Pākehā

### Te Ao Māori i roto i te Reo Pākehā

- Ka matapaki, ka tiki atu hoki te ākonga i tā te titiro Māori ki tōna ao hei tautoko i tōna māramatanga ki te reo Pākehā.



### Te Reo Whakawhiti Kōrero me te Reo Kura

- Ka piki ngā pūkenga o te ākonga ki te whakawhitiwhiti kōrero i te reo Pākehā, hei tautoko i ngā pūkenga whakahoahoa.



- Ka piki ngā pūkenga i te reo Pākehā hei tautoko i te akoranga puta noa i te marautanga, i ngā taumata teitei kē atu.



ā-Waha

ā-Tā

ā-Tinana

**Āheinga Reo** Ka pāhekoheko angitu te ākonga i te reo Pākehā mō ngā take huhua noa iho.

- Ka tautohu, ka mārama hoki ki te pūtake o ngā kōrero ā-waha me ōna pānga ki te hunga whakarongo e whāia ana.



- Ka tautohu, ka mārama hoki ki ētahi mōhiohio whāiti i ngā kōrero ā-waha, tae atu ki ngā momo kōrero Māori ake nei pēnei i te whaikōrero me te pepeha.



- Ka ngāwari te whakaputa i ōna ake ariā.



- Ka whakarongo, ka tika hoki te whakautu i roto i ngā matapaki ā-waha poto, ngāwari, tae atu ki ngā pāhekohekotanga i ngā horopaki ōkawa.



- Ka tautohu, ka mārama hoki (ki te tautokona), ki te hiahia o te kaituhi ki ngā ariā matua, me ētahi mōhiohio motuhake i ngā tuhinga e piki haere nei te matatini.



- Ka tautohu, ka mārama hoki ki te pūtake o ngā tuhinga kōrero me te āhua o te hunga pānui e whāia ana.



- Ka mārama ki te painga o te pānui me te tuhituhi i tā rātou mahi o ia rā.



- Ka tuhi mō ngā pūtake maha, tae atu ki ētahi i roto i ngā horopaki Māori.



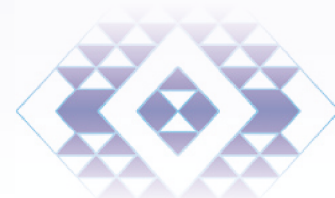
- Ka whakaatu mōhiohio me ngā ariā mō te huhua o ngā kaupapa.



- Ka mārama ki te whakamahinga me te pānga o ngā āhuatanga o te reo tohu.











- Ka whakamahi i te whakawhitiwhiti reo tohu māmā hei tautoko i te whakawhitiwhiti reo kōrero.






**Puna Reo** Ka mārama, ka whakawhiti angitu te ākongā i te reo Pākehā mā ōna anō mōhiotanga reo.





- Ka mārama, ka whakamahi i te kupu kōrero. 
- Ka whakamahi i ngā āhuatanga pēnei i ngā pūtūingoa whaiaro me tā te reo Māori tirohanga hei waihanga tikanga, pānga hoki ki te reo kōrero. 






- Ka mārama ki ngā hononga oro-pū e haere tahi ana ki te tuhi kupu Pākehā. 
- Ka tīmata ki te whakamahi i ngā rerenga ngāwari, i ngā rerenga pūhui, me ētahi pūtūhono poto. 
- Ka whakaatu i tana mōhio ki ngā āhuatanga taketake o te reo, ki te wā, ki te ōritenga o te tāhū me te kupumahi o tētahi rerenga, ki ngā takitini, me te whakaraupapa tika i ngā kupu o te rerenga. 
- Ka āhukahuka, ka whakamahi hoki i ngā kupu he rite tonu te whakamahi, tae atu ki ētahi kupu hāngai ki tētahi wehenga reo motuhake. 
- Ka mōhio ki te tātaki i ngā kupu auau me te kite atu e mārama ana ki ētahi tauira tuhi, āhuatanga tūtata rānei. 
- He tika te whakamahi i ngā tohutuhi. 


- Ka mārama ki te hononga i waenga i te reo kōrero me te reo tohu. 

**Rautaki Reo** Ka mārama, ka whakamahi, ka whakamahuki hoki i te tōnuitanga o ngā rautaki hei whakangāwari i te akoranga, i te whakawhitiwhiti kōrero.

- Ka mārama, ka taea te whakawhiti mai i tētahi reo matatini ki tētahi, ina koa, mai i te reo Māori ki te reo Pākehā. 

- Ka whakamahi i ngā tīwhiri horopaki hei hanga tikanga mai i ngā kōrero ā-waha. 
- Ka whakatāhuhu i ngā kōrero ā-waha ngāwari hei whakaatu i te māramatanga i hiahiatia, hei whakaoho hoki/rānei i ngā whakaaro o te kaiwhakarongo ki tāna i hiahia ai. 
- Ka whai wāhi noa i roto i ngā matapakī ā-rōpū. 
- Ka whakaatu anō i ngā ariā matua i muri i te pānui, i te whakarongo rānei ki ētahi kupu. 

- Ka whakamahi i ngā rauemi pēnei i ngā papakupu, i te punakupu, me ngā taputapu taki-kupu o te rorohiko. 
- Ka pānui mō te tikanga mā te aro ki te whakatāhuhutanga me ngā tīwhiri ā-kanohi. 
- Ka aroturuki, ka whakatika i a ia anō i a ia e pānui ana, e tuhi ana rānei hei whakapiki i te huatau o te kōrero, hei whakamārama hoki i ngā tikanga. 
- Ka whakamahi i ōna wheako whaiaro hei hanga tikanga hei hanga tuhinga hoki. 
- Ka whakatāhuhu tika i ngā tuhinga hei hanga i ōna whāinga e whāia ana. 

- Ka whakamahi i ngā tīwhiri reo tohu hei hanga tikanga mai i te tuhinga ā-waha. 





## Ngā Āhuatanga o te Ākongā i te Tomokanga ki Kaupae 2

*Ka puta pea i te ākongā te katoa, te nuinga rānei o ēnei āhuatanga e whai ake nei:*

- te āhei ki te whakawhitiwhiti mōhiohio me te ariā i runga i te tika
- he matatau nei ki tētahi pūkeinga kupu rahi tonu, tae atu ki ngā kupu he onge tonu te rongona
- ka āhei ki te whakamahi i ngā ture reo māmā
- ka māia ki te kōkiri i ētahi hanganga ture reo matatini kē atu
- ka āhei ki te pānui mō te tikanga, me ngā mōhiohio o roto
- he ngahau te pānui ki te ākongā
- he māia ki te whakamātau ki te reo ina kōrero, ina tuhituhi rānei
- ka āhei ki te whakawhanake me te whakaraupapa ariā i te reo tuhituhi.

### Te Tino Āhua o te Reo Pākehā

### Te Ao Māori i roto i te Reo Pākehā

- Ka matapaki, ka tiki atu hoki te ākongā i tā te titiro Māori ki tōna ao hei tautoko i tōna māramatanga ki te reo Pākehā.



### Te Reo Whakawhiti Kōrero me te Reo Kura

- Ka piki ngā pūkeinga o te ākongā ki te whakawhitiwhiti kōrero i te reo Pākehā, hei tautoko i ngā pūkeinga whakahoahoa.



- Ka piki ngā pūkeinga i te reo Pākehā hei tautoko i te akoranga puta noa i te marautanga, i ngā taumata teitei kē atu.



### ā-Waha

### ā-Tā

### ā-Tinana

**Āheinga Reo** Ka pāhekoheko angitu te ākongā i te reo Pākehā, mō ngā take huhua noa iho.

- Ka tautohu, ka mārama, ka whakapuaki kōrero hoki mō te pūtake o ngā kōrero ā-waha me ōna pānga ki te hunga whakarongo e whāia ana.



- Ka whakamāori, ka whakamahuki hoki i ngā mōhiohio mai i ngā kōrero ā-waha, tae atu ki ngā momo kōrero Māori ake nei pēnei i ngā pakiwaitara.



- Ka whakanohonoho, ka whakapuaki hoki i ngā mōhiohio me ngā whakaaro me te pikinga anō o te mārama ki te hunga whakarongo.



- Ka tīmata, ka whakarongo, ka urupare kia hāngai tonu i roto i ngā whakawhitinga kōrero, he roa ētahi, he poto ētahi, ahakoa matatini, ahakoa ngāwari.



- Ka tautohu, ka mārama hoki ki te hiahia o te kaituhi, ki ngā ariā matua me ētahi mōhiohio motuhake i ngā tuhinga e piki haere nei te matatini, me te pikinga ake o te māia kia tū takitahi.



- Ka tautohu, ka mārama, ka tīmata hoki ki te whakapuaki kōrero mō te whāinga o ngā tuhinga me ōna pānga ki te hunga e whāia ana hei hoa whakarongo.



- Ka whakamahi i ngā pūkeinga pānui me ngā pūkeinga tuhituhi i ngā mahi o ia rā.



- Ka whakawhanake whakaaro mō ngā pūtake maha, tae atu ki ētahi i roto i ngā horopaki Māori.



- Ka mārama te whakaatu atu i ngā mōhiohio me ngā ariā mō te huhua o ngā kaupapa.



- Ka tautohu, ka mārama hoki ki te whāinga o ngā tohutohu ā-tinana maha, ki ngā koringa kanohi, me ngā kahanga tangi, āhuareka o te reo, ahakoa piki, ahakoa heke, me te mārama anō ki te painga o ēnei ki te hunga mātakitaki e hiahiatia ana.















- Ka mārama ki te tikanga o te reo tohu i roto i tōna horopaki ā-ahurea, ina koa, te nohopuku, te harirū me ngā tohu whakamihī, whakanui i te tangata kē.



























**Puna Reo** Ka mārama, ka whakawhiti angitu te ākongā i te reo Pākehā mā ōna anō mōhiotanga reo.

- Ka mārama ki ngā āhuatanga tiwekaweka o te tātaki i te reo Pākehā pēnei i ngā pū wahangū. 
- Ka mārama, ka whakamahi i tana puna kupu e whānui haere ana, tae atu ki ngā kupu aronga-whāiti ki tētahi kaupapa.  
- Ka whakamahi i ngā āhuatanga o te reo ā-waha, pēnei i te oro piki me te heke, te tere hoki, hei hanga whakaahua i te hinengaro o te kaiwhakarongo. 
- Ka whakamahi i ngā rerenga ngāwari, pūhui hoki me te huhua o ngā pūtūhono. 
- Ka whakaari i te mōhiotanga me te whakamahinga tika o ngā ture reo taketake, tae atu ki te wā, ki ngā kupu takitini, ki te raupapa tika o ngā kupu me te ōritenga tāhū, pūnga anō hoki. 
- Ka āhukahuka, ka whakamahi aunoa hoki i ngā kupu auau te whakamahi, tae atu ki ētahi kupu hāngai ki tētahi kaupapa motuhake, ki tētahi wehenga reo motuhake, tae atu ki ngā kupu mō te mātauranga.  
- Ka mārama ki ngā tauira tātaki kupu noa; ka tātaki i te nuinga o ngā kupu auau; ka whakaatu i te mārama ki ngā tauira tātaki matatini kē atu.  
- He tika te whakamahi i ngā tohutuhi matatini kē atu. 
- Ka kōwhiri i ngā āhuatanga reo tohu hei whakanikoniko i āna whakawhitiwhiti kōrero. 

**Rautaki Reo** Ka mārama, ka whakamahi, ka whakamahuki hoki i te tōnuitanga o ngā rautaki hei whakangāwari i te akoranga, i te whakawhitiwhiti kōrero.

- Ka āta mōhio mārire ki te whakawhiti i te mātauranga, i te māramatanga me ngā rautaki mai i te reo Māori ki te reo Pākehā, ā, e mārama ana hoki ka taea ngā rautaki te whakawhiti mai i te reo Pākehā ki te reo Māori.      

- Ka whakamahi i te tōnuitanga o ngā rautaki reo kia hauhaketa mai te tikanga o ngā kōrero ā-waha.  
- Ka tārei i ngā kōrero ā-waha uaua ake (ōkawa, ōpaki) hei whakaatu i tētahi kaupapa, hei whakaoho hoki/rānei i ngā whakaaro o te hunga whakarongo ki tāna i hiahia ai. 
- Ka tīmata, ka whai wāhi hoki ki ngā matapaki ā-rōpū.  
- Ka kaha ake te āhei ki te whakarāpopoto i tētahi tuhinga, kōrero ā-waha rānei, ka whakamārama ai i ngā whakaaro o roto. 
- Ka whakamahi, ki te aratakina, i ngā momo whāiti o tēnei mea te rauemi, tae atu ki ngā papakupu me te ipurangi, me te arotahi ki ngā wāhanga motuhake o ngā whakaputanga, pēnei i ngā kuputaka, i ngā whārangi ihirangi me ngā kuputohu, hei kimi mōhiohio.  
- Ka āhei, ki te tautokona, ki te hīkaro i te tino tikanga o ngā tuhinga, kia hōhonu ake ai ngā māramatanga.  
- Ka hokihoki atu ki te tārei anō i āna ake tuhinga kia mārama kē atu, kia rere ā-tuna te kupu. 
- Ka whakamahi i ōna wheako whaiaro me tana mōhio ki te pānui i te reo Māori hei hanga tikanga, hei hanga tuhinga hoki.  
- Ka whakaraupapa i ngā ariā, ka whakamahi hoki i te tini o ngā āheinga rerenga me ngā taputapu tui kupu hei whakanikoniko i te whakatāhuhutanga, me te rere o ngā tuhinga kōrero. 
- Ka tīmata tana whakamahi i te oro piki, heke e tika ana, te āta whakahuahua mārire, te tangi āhuareka, kawa o te reo, ka whakatā hoki hei āwhina i te māramatanga ina pānui i tētahi mea, ina pānui ā-waha i ngā tuhinga matatini. 
- Ka aro atu ki te horopaki ā-ahurea e haere ana te reo tohu, kia tika ai te whāinga wāhi ki ngā mahi. 





## Ngā Āhutatanga o te Ākongā i te Tomokanga ki Kaupae 3

*Ka puta pea i te ākongā te katoa, te nuinga rānei o ēnei āhutatanga e whai ake nei:*

- he ngāwari ki a ia te kōrero Pākehā i te whānuitanga e piki haere ana o ngā horopaki ōkawa, ōpaki hoki
- e tino piki ana ngā pūkenga ki te whakamahi i te reo o te mātauranga (pēnei i ngā kupu hangarau) me ngā whakaritenga reo (pēnei i te reo whakarite me ngā kupu whakarite)
- he māia ki te pānui i te reo Pākehā, he mōhio ki te whānuitanga o ngā rautaki hei hura i te tikanga o ngā kupu tauhou
- he toitū te mātauranga ki ngā ture o te reo
- ka āhei ki te tātari he pēhea te pānga o te hunga whakarongo, te pūtake, me te horopaki ki te tuhinga e āhei ai ia te whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro i roto i ngā tuhinga ā-ringa.

### Te Tino Āhua o te Reo Pākehā

### Te Ao Māori i roto i te Reo Pākehā

- Ka matapaki, ka tiki atu hoki te ākongā i tā te titiro Māori ki tōna ao hei tautoko i tōna māramatanga ki te reo Pākehā.



### Te Reo Whakawhiti Kōrero me te Reo Kura

- Ka piki ngā pūkenga o te ākongā ki te whakawhitiwhiti kōrero i te reo Pākehā, hei tautoko i ngā pūkenga whakahoahoa.



- Ka piki ngā pūkenga i te reo Pākehā hei tautoko i te akoranga puta noa i te marautanga, i ngā taumata teitei kē atu.



### ā-Waha

### ā-Tā

### ā-Tinana

**Āheinga Reo** Ka pāhekoheko angitu te ākongā i te reo Pākehā me te pai anō, mō ngā take huhua noa iho.

- Ka tautohu, ka mārama, ka whakapuaki pai hoki i ngā pūtake o ngā kōrero ā-waha me ōna pānga ki te whānuitanga o te hunga whakarongo e whāia ana.



- Ka whakamāori, ka waihanga anō i ētahi mōhiohio whāiti o ngā kōrero ā-waha, tae atu ki ngā momo kōrero Māori ake nei, pēnei i ngā mōteatea.



- Ka kōkiri i ana ariā me ana whakaaro i runga i te mārama me te māia.



- Ka whakarongo, ka whakamāori, ka whakautu tika i roto i ngā whakawhitinga kōrero e piki haere tonu nei te matatini.



- Ka tautohu, ka mārama hoki ki te hiahia o te kaituhi, ki ngā mōhiohio motuhake me ngā ariā matua i ngā tuhinga e piki haere nei te matatini, me te tū takitahi.
- Ka tautohu, ka mārama, ka whakapuaki kōrero mō te whāinga o ngā tuhinga me te āhua o te hunga whakarongo e whāia ana.
- Ka whakamahi i ngā pūkenga pānui, tuhi hoki mō ngā mahi o ia rā i runga i te māia.
- Ka whakawhanake whakaaro mō ngā pūtake maha me ngā taunaki e tika ana, tae atu ki ētahi i roto i ngā horopaki Māori.
- Ka mārama te whakaatu i ngā ariā tūhono me ngā mōhiohio mō te huhua o ngā kaupapa.

- Ka whakamahi i te reo tohu hei whakaū, hei whakaihiihi hoki i ngā wā e tika ana me ngā pūtake mō te hunga e whāia ana hei kaiwhakarongo.
- Ka maumahara ki te hunga e whāia ana hei kaiwhakarongo ina kōwhiritia ngā āhutatanga reo tohu e hāngai ana.





**Puna Reo** Ka mārama, ka whakawhiti angitu te ākongā i te reo Pākehā mā ōna anō mōhiotanga reo.

- Ka tautohu, ka mārama hoki ki te pūtake o ngā kupu me ngā ture e pā ana ki aua kupu.



- Ka mārama ki te tino whānuitanga o ngā rārangi kupu, ka mārama ki te rerekētanga o ngā kupu ōkawa, o ngā kupu aronga-whāiti ki tētahi kaupapa hoki, ngā kupu ōpaki, ā, he matatau ki te whakamahi i ngā tūmomo kupu.



- Ka whakamahi i te whānuitanga o ngā āhuatanga reo, pēnei i te huahuatau, i te kupu whakarite, i te kupu whakaahua tangi, hei hanga tikanga, hei whakaihiihi hoki i ana kōrero.



- Ka whakamahi i ngā rerenga ngāwari, i ngā rerenga pūhui, i ngā rerenga matatini he tika te takoto, he hāngai hoki ki te pūtake o ngā tuhinga.



- Ka āta whakamahi mārire i te maha tonu o ngā āhuatanga ā-reo, tae atu ki ngā whakaritenga ā-ture reo, me ētahi atu āhuatanga e tika ana.



- Ka āhukahuka, ka whakamahi i te pūkeinga tino nui o ngā kupu e tino whakahuahuatia ana, ngā kupu aronga-whāiti ki tētahi kaupapa, me ngā kupu o te mātauranga.



- Ka mārama, ka whakamahi tika hoki i ngā tauria tātaki matatini.



- Ka tika te whakamahi i ngā tohu tuhi reo, ka hāngai anō hoki.



- Ka whakamahi i te tino whānuitanga o ngā āhuatanga reo tohu pēnei i te tangi piki, te tangi heke, i te kaha āhuareka, kawa o te reo, i ngā wahangūtanga, i ngā rerekētanga o te kaha whakaputa kōrero, i ngā koringa ā-kanohi, me ngā tohutohu ā-tinana.



**Rautaki Reo** Ka mārama, ka whakamahi, ka whakamahuki hoki i te tōnuitanga o ngā rautaki hei whakangāwari i te akoranga, i te whakawhitiwhiti kōrero.

- Kua piki tana āhei ki te whakawhiti i ana rautaki reo me ngā tukanga i roto i ngā mahi ako reo me ngā kaupapa katoa o te marautanga.



- Ka whiriwhiri i ngā mōhiohio, i ngā puna maha ina tūhono ariā ki ngā mātauranga kua mau kē, me ngā wheako, kia mārama ai ki ngā kōrero ā-waha.



- Ka tārei i te whānui o ngā kōrero ā-waha, āhua uaua, matatini rānei, hei whakaatu kōrero ki ngā kaiwhakarongo, hei whakaoho rānei i tētahi pānga e hiahiatia ana.



- Ka whakahaere, ka whai wāhi hoki ki ngā matapakī ā-rōpū.



- Ka tātari, ka matapakī hoki i ngā kōrero ā-waha i runga i te matatau.



- Ka whakamahi i ngā rauemi, pēnei i ngā papakupu me te ipurangi, me te arotahi ki ngā wāhanga motuhake o ngā whakaputanga, pēnei i ngā kuputaka, i ngā whārangi ihirangi me ngā kuputohu, hei kimi mōhiohio.



- Ka kōtuitui i ngā mōhiohio mai i ngā puna e rua, neke atu rānei, hei whiriwhiri, hei kōkiri hoki i ana ariā.



- Ka arotake i āna anō tuhinga kia mōhio ai kei te hāngai ngā āhuatanga tuhinga ki te hunga whakarongo me te kaupapa.



- Ka whakamahi i ōna wheako whaiaro me tana mōhio ki te reo Māori, tae atu ki ana mātauranga mō te ao, hei hanga tikanga hei hanga tuhinga hoki.



- Ka whakaraupapa i ngā tuhinga mā te whakamahi i ngā kōwae, i ngā whakaupoko, i ngā whakaupoko o raro, me ngā whakaahua hei āwhina i te māramatanga o te kaupānui.



- Ka whakamahi i te oro piki, te oro heke e tika ana, te āta whakahuahua mārire, te tangi āhuareka, kawa o te reo, ka whakatā hoki hei āwhina i te māramatanga ina pānui i tētahi mea, ina pānui ā-waha i ngā tuhinga matatini.



- Ka whakamahi i te reo me te koringa tinana hei tautoko i te tikanga, hei whakaoho hoki i te hunga whakarongo.





# Te Reo Pākehā





# TE REO PĀKEHĀ

## Te Reo Pākehā *Ko tō ringa ki ngā rākau a te Pākehā hei ora mō te tinana*

The learning area Te Reo Pākehā presents the English language as a communication tool that underpins social interaction, the expression of thoughts, and academic learning.

The learning area supports Māori as the primary language of instruction in Māori-medium schools. It does so by strengthening, and building on, the linguistic competencies outlined in the Reo Māori learning area. In this way, Te Reo Pākehā as a learning area supports an additive approach to language teaching and learning.

In order for learners to become bilingual and biliterate, we need to teach for the transfer of skills and understanding across the languages. Students can transfer some strategies from their learning of the Māori language. However, they need to be shown explicitly how to use those strategies in English. Equally, strategies can be taught in English and transferred to Māori. In this way, the learning area Te Reo Pākehā supports the teaching for transfer across the Māori and English languages by encouraging teachers to acknowledge the learner's total language toolkit.

### **The Purpose of Learning English**

Our parents and tīpuna have long understood the benefits of learning English as a means of accessing, and contributing to, the wider world. An excerpt from a well-known saying by Sir Apirana Ngata is quoted above. It encourages children and young people to retain their heritage (including the Māori language), while also mastering the tools of the Pākehā world (including the English language).

The same idea is echoed by parents today, and the learning area Te Reo Pākehā supports the aspiration that children in Māori-medium settings be bilingual in Māori and English.

Students need to develop proficiency in English in order to:

- participate in, and contribute to, the global world
- be biliterate
- achieve NCEA qualifications in English if they wish
- achieve other aspirations.

### **The Structure of this Learning Area**

The vast majority of learners in Māori-medium settings are proficient speakers of English. The learning area Te Reo Pākehā acknowledges learners' prior language knowledge and seeks to build on that base in order to develop bilingual learners.

Learners will experience the functional, colloquial, and idiomatic features of English in everyday settings. Functional language refers to the purposes for which we use language. These include greeting people, buying things, making appointments, and asking for help. Multiple language functions are evident in everyday language use. For example, it is common to ask for help while buying things.





# TE REO PĀKEHĀ

In order to achieve academically, learners need to be proficient in academic language. Through studying academic English, learners will be equipped to reach their full potential at secondary and tertiary levels.

The skills of listening, speaking, reading, and writing can be strengthened if learners explore communicative and academic English.

## Six Stages

This learning area has a two-part structure. First there is a progression composed of three steps – Kaupae 1, 2, and 3. This progression then leads into three levels, Taumata 6, 7, and 8.

The three Kaupae guide programme development for the teaching and learning of English up to the beginning of senior secondary level. Taumata 6, 7, and 8 guide programme development for the teaching and learning of English at senior secondary level. Taumata 6, 7, and 8 are translations of the equivalent levels in the English learning area of The New Zealand Curriculum.

## Four Strands at Kaupae 1, 2, and 3

There are four strands at Kaupae 1, 2, and 3: The Nature of te Reo Pākehā; ā-Waha; ā-Tā; and ā-Tinana. Except for The Nature of te Reo Pākehā, they are the same as those of the Reo Māori learning area. This approach will support teachers of the Māori and English languages in planning together and teaching for transfer wherever possible. The four strands of this learning are as follows.

## *Te Tino Āhua o te Reo Pākehā – The Nature of te Reo Pākehā*

This integrating strand underpins the other three. It signals an important direction for English-learning programmes in Māori-medium settings. There are two parts to this strand: Te Ao Māori i roto i te Reo Pākehā Māori World View and Te Reo Whakawhiti Kōrero me te Reo Kura Social and Academic Language. Because of the high-level, guiding nature of this strand, it has the same achievement objectives at all three Kaupae.

### *ā-Waha – oral language*

This strand covers oral texts, including their purposes and language systems, as well as suggesting effective strategies for learners.

### *ā-Tā – written language*

This strand covers written texts, including their purposes and language systems, and also suggests effective strategies for reading and writing in English.

### *ā-Tinana – non-verbal language*

This strand covers those aspects of English that are not explicitly oral or written. These aspects carry significant meaning. It is important for learners to master non-verbal language in order to become competent users of English.





## Achievement Aims and Achievement Objectives

Three achievement aims interweave the oral, written, and non-verbal language strands to capture the holistic nature of language teaching. The same three aims span all three Kaupae.

**Āheinga Reo** – language functions: the purposes for which language is used

**Puna Reo** – language systems: including the words, sounds, and structure of language

**Rautaki Reo** – language strategies: approaches that could help a learner to understand and communicate effectively

Each of these overarching aims is divided into achievement objectives. These explain the precise nature of the aim at each Kaupae. Note also that within the broader aim of developing language strategies (Rautaki Reo), there is a specific achievement objective at each Kaupae that supports the learner's mastery of transfer strategies. This achievement objective spans the three strands of ā-Waha, ā-Tā, and ā-Tinana.

## The Structure of Taumata 6, 7, and 8

At senior secondary levels, English is structured around two interconnected strands. Each encompasses the oral, written, and visual forms of the language. The strands differentiate between the modes in which students are primarily:

- making meaning of ideas or information they receive (**Listening, Reading, and Viewing**)
- creating meaning for themselves or others (**Speaking, Writing, and Presenting**).

The achievement objectives within each strand suggest progressions through which most students move as they become more effective oral, verbal, and visual communicators. Using a set of underpinning processes and strategies, students develop knowledge, skills, and understanding relating to:

- text purposes and audiences
- ideas within language contexts
- language features that enhance texts
- the structure and organisation of texts.

Students need to practise *making meaning* and *creating meaning* at each level of the curriculum. This need is reflected in the way in which the achievement objectives are structured. As students progress, they use their skills to engage with tasks and texts that are increasingly sophisticated and challenging – and they do this in increasing depth.





## The Structure of Kaupae 1, 2, and 3

### Ngā Āhuatanga o te Ākonga Te Tino Āhua o te Reo Pākehā



ā-Waha



ā-Tā



ā-Tinana

**Āheinga Reo**

The learner interacts successfully in English for a wide range of purposes.

**Puna Reo**

The learner's language knowledge facilitates their ability to understand and communicate successfully in English.

**Rautaki Reo**

The learner can understand, use, and explain a range of strategies that facilitate their learning and communication.



= whakarongo



= pānui



= mātakitaki



= kōrero



= tuhituhi



= whakaatu





## Ngā Āhuatanga o te Ākonga i te Tomokanga ki Kaupae 1

The learner is likely to display most or all of the following characteristics:

- confidence in oral English, including familiarity with most high-frequency words
- knowledge of books and the basic structure of a text
- understanding of Māori letter-sound relationships
- capability in Māori writing and punctuation
- some comprehension of written English – may be confident in reading and/or writing short text
- language skills in areas of specific interest such as computer games.

### Te Tino Āhua o te Reo Pākehā

### Te Ao Māori i roto i te Reo Pākehā

- The learner discusses, and draws on, a Māori world view in order to support their understanding of the English language.



### Te Reo Whakawhiti Kōrero me te Reo Kura

- The learner develops communicative competence in English to support social interaction.



- The learner develops skills in English to support learning across the curriculum at higher levels.



### ā-Waha

### ā-Tā

### ā-Tinana

**Āheinga Reo** The learner interacts successfully in English for a wide range of purposes.

- Identifies and understands the purpose of oral text and its effects on the intended audience.
- Identifies and understands specific information in oral texts, including Māori oral texts such as whaikōrero and pepeha.
- Expresses their own ideas competently.
- Listens, and responds appropriately, during short, simple oral discussions, including interactions in a limited range of formal situations.














- With support, identifies and understands the author's intention, the main ideas, and some specific information in text of gradually increasing complexity.
- Identifies and understands the purpose of a text and the nature of its intended audience.
- Understands the application of reading and writing in their daily life.
- Writes for a variety of purposes, including some within Māori contexts.
- Communicates information and ideas about a range of topics.

- Understands the purpose and effect of non-verbal language features.
- Uses simple non-verbal communication to support verbal communication.


























**Puna Reo** The learner’s language knowledge facilitates their ability to understand and communicate successfully in English.

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Understands and uses a range of vocabulary.  </li> <li>• Uses features such as personal pronouns and Māori voice to create meaning and effect in oral language. </li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Understands letter-sound relationships associated with English spelling.  </li> <li>• Begins to use both simple and compound sentences and some simple conjunctions. </li> <li>• Demonstrates knowledge and use of basic grammar, tense, subject-verb agreement, plurals, and appropriate word order. </li> <li>• Recognises and uses a large bank of high-frequency words automatically as well as some topic- and genre-specific words.  </li> <li>• Spells many high-frequency words correctly and shows knowledge of common spelling patterns and approximations. </li> <li>• Uses basic punctuation correctly. </li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Understands the relationship between verbal and non-verbal language.  </li> </ul> |
|---|---|--|

**Rautaki Reo** The learner can understand, use, and explain a range of strategies that facilitate their learning and communication.

- Understands that transfer is possible from one literacy to another, for example, from Māori to English.      

- |  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses contextual cues to make meaning from oral text.  </li> <li>• Structures simple oral text to impart desired understanding and/or gain a desired effect on the listener. </li> <li>• Participates spontaneously in group discussion. </li> <li>• Retells the main ideas after reading or listening to a text. </li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses resources such as dictionaries, thesauri, and computer spell-check tools.  </li> <li>• Reads for meaning using structure and visual cues.  </li> <li>• Self-monitors and self-corrects while reading or writing to improve fluency and to clarify meaning.  </li> <li>• Uses their personal experience to make meaning from and to create text.  </li> <li>• Structures text appropriately to achieve its intended purpose. </li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses non-verbal language cues to make meaning from oral text. </li> </ul> |
|--|--|---|





## Ngā Āhuatanga o te Ākonga i te Tomokanga ki Kaupae 2

The learner is likely to display most or all of the following characteristics:

- ability to communicate information and ideas competently
- active familiarity with a large bank of vocabulary, including a range of low-frequency words
- ability to use basic grammar
- confidence to attempt more complex grammatical structures
- ability to read for meaning and information
- enjoyment of reading
- confidence to experiment with language when speaking or writing
- ability to develop and organise ideas in written language.

### Te Tino Āhua o te Reo Pākehā

### Te Ao Māori i roto i te Reo Pākehā

- The learner discusses, and draws on, a Māori world view in order to support their understanding of the English language.



### Te Reo Whakawhiti Kōrero me te Reo Kura

- The learner develops communicative competence in English to support social interaction.



- The learner develops skills in English to support learning across the curriculum at higher levels.



### ā-Waha

### ā-Tā

### ā-Tinana

## Āheinga Reo The learner interacts successfully in English for a wide range of purposes.

- Identifies, understands, and articulates the purpose of oral text and its effects on the intended audience.
- Interprets and explains specific information from oral text, including Māori text such as pakiwaitara.
- Formulates and expresses information and ideas with increased clarity.
- Initiates, listens, and responds appropriately during oral interactions of varying lengths and complexity.










- With increasing independence, identifies and understands the author's intention, the main ideas, and some specific information in text of gradually increasing complexity.
- Identifies, understands, and begins to articulate the purpose of a text and the nature of its intended audience.
- Applies reading and writing skills in everyday tasks.
- Develops ideas for a variety of purposes, including some within Māori contexts.
- Clearly communicates ideas and information about a range of topics.

- Identifies and understands the purpose of simple gestures, facial expressions, and changes in volume or tone and appreciates their effects on the intended audience.
- Understands the meaning of non-verbal communication according to cultural context, for example, silence, shaking hands, hariru, and signs of respect.

















**Puna Reo** The learner’s language knowledge facilitates their ability to understand and communicate successfully in English.

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Understands the irregular features of English spelling such as silent letters. </li> <li>• Understands and uses an increasing range of vocabulary, including topic-specific terminology. </li> <li>• Uses oral language features, such as modulated intonation and pace, to create a visual picture in the listener’s mind. </li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses both simple and compound sentences with a variety of conjunctions. </li> <li>• Demonstrates knowledge and correct use of basic grammar, including tense, plurals, word order, and subject-verb agreement. </li> <li>• Recognises and uses a large bank of high-frequency words automatically, as well as some topic- and genre-specific words and academic terms. </li> <li>• Understands common spelling patterns; spells most high-frequency words correctly; and shows some understanding of more complex spelling patterns. </li> <li>• Uses more complex punctuation correctly. </li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Chooses non-verbal features to enhance their spoken communication. </li> </ul> |
|---|--|--|

**Rautaki Reo** The learner can understand, use, and explain a range of strategies that facilitate their learning and communication.

- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Consciously transfers knowledge, understanding, and strategies from Māori to English and is aware that strategies can also be transferred from English to Māori. </li> </ul>   |  |   |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uses a range of comprehension strategies to infer meaning from oral text. </li> <li>• Structures more complex oral texts (formal and informal) to convey meaning and/or gain a desired effect on the listener. </li> <li>• Initiates and participates in group discussions. </li> <li>• Summarises a text and describes the ideas within it with growing competence. </li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• With guidance, uses specific types of resource, such as dictionaries and the internet, and focuses on particular parts of publications, such as glossaries, contents pages, and indexes, to find information. </li> <li>• With support, draws inferences from text to gain deeper meaning. </li> <li>• Revises their own writing to clarify meaning and improve fluency. </li> <li>• Uses their personal experience and Māori-language literacy to make meaning from and to create text. </li> <li>• Organises ideas and uses a variety of sentence structures and cohesive devices to enhance the structure and flow of written text. </li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Begins to use appropriate intonation, pronunciation, tone of voice, and pauses to aid listeners’ comprehension when reading complex texts aloud. </li> <li>• Takes account of the cultural context in which non-verbal communication occurs in order to participate appropriately. </li> </ul> |





## Ngā Āhuatanga o te Ākonga i te Tomokanga ki Kaupae 3

The learner is likely to display most or all of the following characteristics:

- comfort with speaking English in an increasing range of formal and informal contexts
- growing competence in using academic vocabulary (such as technical terms) and language devices (such as figurative language and metaphor)
- confidence in reading English, employing a range of strategies to discover the meaning of unfamiliar words
- well-established grammatical knowledge
- ability to think critically about how audience, purpose, and context influence text in order to effectively communicate ideas in writing.

### Te Tino Āhua o te Reo Pākehā

### Te Ao Māori i roto i te Reo Pākehā

- The learner discusses, and draws on, a Māori world view in order to support their understanding of the English language.



### Te Reo Whakawhiti Kōrero me te Reo Kura

- The learner develops communicative competence in English to support social interaction.



- The learner develops skills in English to support learning across the curriculum at higher levels.



ā-Waha

ā-Tā

ā-Tinana

**Āheinga Reo** The learner interacts successfully in English for a wide range of purposes.

- Identifies, understands, and clearly articulates the purposes of oral texts and their effects on a range of intended audiences.

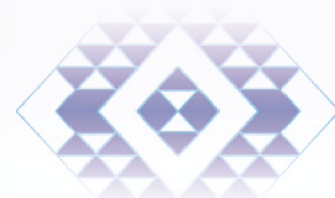


- Interprets and reconstructs specific information in oral text, including Māori oral text such as mōteatea.
- Justifies ideas and opinions clearly and confidently.
- Listens, interprets, and responds appropriately during sustained and increasingly complex spoken interactions.







- Independently identifies and understands the author's intention, the main ideas, and specific information in text of gradually increasing complexity.
- Identifies, understands, and articulates the purpose of a text and the nature of the intended audience.
- Confidently uses reading and writing skills for everyday tasks.
- Develops ideas with supporting evidence for a variety of purposes, including some within Māori contexts.
- Clearly communicates connected ideas and information about a range of topics.









- Uses non-verbal language for emphasis and effect as appropriate to the audience and purpose.
- Is mindful of audience and purpose when choosing appropriate non-verbal language features.












**Puna Reo** The learner’s language knowledge facilitates their ability to understand and communicate successfully in English.


- Identifies and understands the origins of words and rules affecting them. 
- Understands a wide range of vocabulary and appreciates the distinction between formal, technical, and informal vocabulary, and uses each type appropriately.  
- Uses a range of language features, such as metaphor, simile, and onomatopoeia, to create meaning and effect when speaking. 










- Uses simple, compound, and complex sentences that are grammatically correct and appropriate to the purpose of the writing. 
- Uses a range of language features correctly, including, but not limited to, grammatical conventions. 
- Recognises and uses a large bank of high-frequency, topic-specific, and academic words.  
- Understands and uses complex spelling patterns.  
- Uses complex punctuation correctly and appropriately.  



- Effectively uses a wide range of non-verbal features such as varied pitch, tone, pauses, changes in volume, facial expressions, and gestures. 

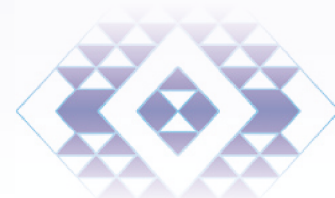
**Rautaki Reo** The learner can understand, use, and explain a range of strategies that facilitate their learning and communication.

- Increasingly able to transfer language strategies and processes in literacy and curriculum–content work.      

- Integrates information from a range of sources when making connections to prior knowledge and experiences in order to understand oral text.  
- Crafts a range of complex oral texts to inform listeners or impart a desired effect.  
- Facilitates and participates in group discussions.  
- Competently analyses and discusses oral text.  

- Independently uses resources, such as dictionaries and the internet, and focuses on particular parts of publications, such as glossaries, contents pages, and indexes, to find information.  
- Synthesises information from two or more sources to formulate and justify opinions.  
- Reviews their own writing to ensure that the text features are appropriate to the audience and purpose. 
- Uses their personal experience, Māori language literacy, and world knowledge to make meaning from and to create text.  
- Organises text using paragraphs, headings, sub-headings, and illustrations to aid the readers’ comprehension.  

- Confidently uses appropriate intonation, pronunciation, expression, tone of voice, and pauses to aid listeners’ comprehension when reading complex texts aloud. 
- Uses voice and movement to support meaning and engage the audience. 







## TE WHAKARONGO, TE PĀNUI, TE MĀTAKITAKI

### Ngā tukanga me ngā rautaki

*Ka āhei te ākongā ki:*

- Te kōtuitui i ngā puna mōhiohio, ngā tukanga me ngā rautaki i runga i te whai hua me te māia, hei tautohu, hei hanga, hei whakapuaki anō i ngā ariā ka hōhonu kē ake, ka hōhonu kē ake.

Ngā Tohu:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– ka tīpako, ka pānui i ngā tuhinga hei mahi pārekareka noa, hei oranga ngākau whaiaro mōna;</li> <li>– ka āta kite, ka mārama, ka whai whakaaro ki ngā hononga i waenga i te reo ā-waha, te reo ā-tuhi, me te reo ataata;</li> <li>– ka kōtuitui i ngā puna mōhiohio me ngā mātauranga kua mau kē i a ia i runga i te whai hua me te māia, e mārama ai ngā momo</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>tuhinga ka huhua kē ake, ka uaua kē ake;</li> <li>– ka tīpako, ka whakamahi i ngā rautaki tukatuka, kimi māramatanga e tika ana, i runga i te māia;</li> <li>– ka wānanga arohaehae i ngā tuhinga i runga i te mārama me te māia;</li> <li>– ka aroturuki, ka arotake i a ia anō, ka whakaahua ā-kupu i te ahu whakamua, me te whakaatu i tāna e ako ana i runga i te māia.</li> </ul> |
|--|---|

*Mā te whai i ēnei tukanga me ēnei rautaki i āna mahi whakarongo, pānui, mātakitaki, ka āhei te ākongā ki:*

### Ngā whāinga me ngā hunga mā rātou ngā tuhinga

- Te whakaatu i te mārama pakari he mea tārai te tuhinga kia hāngai ki te āhua o te whāinga me te hunga mā rātou taua tuhinga.

Ngā Tohu:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– ka āta kite, ka mārama he mea āta waihanga ngā tuhinga kia rite ki ngā whāinga, ki ngā hunga mā rātou ngā tuhinga, me ngā āhuatanga maha, ka whiriwhiri anō i tēnei āhua;</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– ka tautohu i te titiro a tēnā, a tēnā i roto i ngā tuhinga, me te āta kite mā te tuhinga tonu pea e whakatau te tūnga o te kaupānui;</li> <li>– ka arotake i te whaitake me te whai hua o ētahi tuhinga i runga i te māia.</li> </ul> |
|---|--|

### Ngā ariā

- Te whakaatu i te mārama pakari ki ngā ariā o roto, o waenga, ā, kei tua anō i ētahi tuhinga.

Ngā Tohu:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– ka kapo i te tikanga, mā te mārama ki ngā ariā rerewhānui;</li> <li>– ka kite i ngā hononga, mā te whakamāori i ngā ariā o roto, o waenga i ngā tuhinga, i ngā horopaki maha;</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– ka āta kite he neke atu pea i te pānuitanga kotahi e taea ana i roto i tētahi tuhinga;</li> <li>– ka mahi, ka tautoko hīkarotanga mai i ngā tuhinga, ko ia anake.</li> </ul> |
|---|---|

### Ngā āhuatanga reo

- Te whakaatu i te mārama pakari ki te wāhi ki ngā āhuatanga reo hei whakaputa pānga i roto, i waenga i ngā tuhinga.

Ngā Tohu:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– ka tautohu i te maha tonu o ngā āhuatanga reo ā-waha, ā-tuhi, ā-ataata, ka mārama anō ki te hua o tēnā, o tēnā;</li> <li>– ka nanao atu i te huhua o ngā kupu hei kapo i te tikanga o te kōrero;</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– ka mārama ki te mahi tahi a ngā tikanga tuhi ki te kawē i te whakaaro, ki te whakaputa pānga, ā, ka whakamāori anō i tēnei āhua;</li> <li>– ka mārama he rerekē anō ngā reo me te āhua o te tuhi o tēnā, o tēnā kaituhi, ka tautohu, ka whakamārama anō i ēnei rerekētanga.</li> </ul> |
|--|---|

### Te hanga

- Te whakaatu i te mārama pakari ki te maha tonu o ngā whakatakotoranga.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka tautohu, ka mārama anō ki ngā āhuatanga me ngā tikanga o te maha tonu o ngā whakatakotoranga tānga, ka whai whakaaro ki te wāhi ki ēnei hei kawē i ngā whakaaro o roto i te tuhinga.





## TE KŌRERO, TE TUHITUHI, TE WHAKAATU

### Ngā tukanga me ngā rautaki

*Ka āhei te ākongā ki:*

- Te kōtuitui i ngā puna mōhiohio, ngā tukanga me ngā rautaki i runga i te whai hua me te māia, hei tautohu, hei hanga, hei whakapuaki i ngā ariā kei te hōhonu kē atu.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka whakamahi i te mārama kukune ki ngā hononga i waenga i te reo ā-waha, ā-tuhi, ā-ataata ina titoa he tuhinga;
- ka tito i te maha tonu o ngā tuhinga kei te kaha kē atu te matahuhua me te uaua, mā te kōtuitui i ngā puna mōhiohio me ngā rautaki tukatuka;

- ka kimi i ngā whakahokinga kōrero mai, me te kuhu atu i ngā whakatikatika kia mārama ake ai ngā tuhinga, kia nui ake anō te pānga;
- ka huritao ki āna ake tuhinga: ka aroturuki, ka arotake i tāna ake ahu whakamua, ka whakahua i tāna e ako ana i runga i te māia.

*Mā te whai i ēnei tukanga me ēnei rautaki i āna mahi whakarongo, pānui, mātakitaki, ka āhei te ākongā ki:*

### Ngā whāinga me ngā hunga mā rātou ngā kōrero

- Te whakaatu i te mārama pakari ki te tārai i ngā tuhinga kia hāngai ai ki ngā hunga maha, ki ngā whāinga maha

Ngā Tohu:

- ka hanga i te maha tonu o ngā tuhinga e whakaatu ana i te mārama ki te whāinga me te hunga mā rātou te tuhinga, mā te āta kōwhiri

i ngā kupu, i ngā whakaaro, i te reo, me te hanga e rite ana;

- ka hiki ake, ka kawea roa i te reo whaiaro i ngā wāhi e hāngai ana.

### Ngā ariā

- Te whakaatu i te mārama pakari ki ngā ariā o roto, o waenga, ā, kei tua anō i ētahi tuhinga.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka whakahiato, ka whakawhiti i ngā ariā, ngā mōhiohio, me ngā māramatanga rerewhānui;
- ka mahi ki te waihanga tuhinga kopi kua āta whakamaheretia, e honohono pai ana, mā te

tāpiri taipitopito ki ngā ariā, mā te hono haere rānei i ngā ariā, i ngā taipitopito rānei;

- ka whakaatu i te mārama ki te maha tonu o ngā aronga, o ngā titiro.

### Ngā āhuatanga reo

- Te tīpako me te whakamahi i te maha tonu o ngā āhuatanga reo kia hāngai tonu, e tutuki ai ngā pānga huhua.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka āta whakamahi i te maha tonu o ngā āhuatanga ā-waha, ā-tuhi, ā-ataata hei kawea i te whakaaro, i te pānga, e pārekareka ai ngā kōrero ki te hunga mā rātou te tuhinga;

- ka nanao atu i te huhua o ngā kupu hei āta whakapuaki i te whakaaro whāiti;

- ka whakamahi i te maha tonu o ngā tikanga tuhi, tae atu ki te whakatakoto tika i te kōrero me ngā tikanga tātaki, i runga i te hāngai, i te whai hua, me te tika.

### Te hanga

- Te whakariterite tuhinga, me te whakamahi i te huhua o ngā whakatakotoranga e hāngai ana, e whai hua ana.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka tutuki pai te honohono tahi me te uru katoa atu o ngā whakaaro e tika ana ina waihanga he tuhinga;

- ka whakariterite, ka whakahiato i ngā ariā me ngā mōhiohio hei whakatinana i tētahi whāinga, i tētahi pānga rānei, me te nanao atu i ngā āhuatanga me ngā tikanga o ētahi whakatakotoranga tuhinga huhua.





## TE WHAKARONGO, TE PĀNUI, TE MĀTAKITAKI

### Ngā tukanga me ngā rautaki

*Ka āhei te ākongā ki:*

- Te kōtuitui i ngā puna mōhiohio, ngā tukanga me ngā rautaki i runga i te whai hua, i te māia, me te hāngai pū, hei tautohu, hei hanga, hei whakapuaki i ngā ariā kei te hōhonu kē atu.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka tīpako, ka pānui i ngā tuhinga hei mahi pārekareka noa, hei oranga ngākau whaiaro mōna;
- ka āta kite, ka mārama ki ngā hononga i waenga i te reo ā-waha, te reo ā-tuhi, me te reo ataata, ka kite anō i te hua o ēnei āhuatanga;
- ka kōtuitui i ngā puna mōhiohio me ngā mātauranga kua mau kē i a ia i runga i te whai hua, i te māia, me te hāngai pū, e mārama ai

ngā momo tuhinga ka huhua kē ake, ka uaua kē ake;

- ka tīpako, ka whakamahi i ngā rautaki tukatuka, kimi māramatanga e tika ana, i runga i te māia me te āhei ki te whakawāwā;
- ka wānanga arohaehae i ngā tuhinga i runga i te mārama me te māia;
- ka aroturuki, ka arotake i a ia anō, ka whakaahua ā-kupu i te ahu whakamua, me te whakaatu i tāna e ako ana i runga i te māia.

*Mā te whai i ēnei tukanga me ēnei rautaki i āna mahi whakarongo, pānui, mātakitaki, ka āhei te ākongā ki:*

### Ngā whāinga me ngā hunga mā rātou ngā tuhinga

- Te whakaatu i te mārama whakawāwā he mea tārai te tuhinga kia hāngai ki te āhua o te whāinga me te hunga mā rātou taua tuhinga.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka āta kite, ka mārama he mea āta waihanga ngā tuhinga kia rite ki ngā koronga maha, ki ngā āhuatanga maha, ka kite anō i te hua o tēnei āhua;

- ka tautohu i te titiro a tēnā, a tēnā i roto i ngā tuhinga, me te āta kite mā te tuhinga tonu pea e whakatau te tūnga o te kaupānui;
- ka arotake i te whaitake me te whai hua o ētahi tuhinga.

### Ngā ariā

- Te whakaatu i te mārama whakawāwā ki ngā ariā o roto, o waenga, ā, kei tua anō i ētahi tuhinga.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka kapo i te tikanga, mā te mārama ki ngā ariā ka hōhonu kē ake, ka hōhonu kē ake;
- ka whiri i ngā hononga, mā te tātari i ngā ariā o roto, o waenga i ngā tuhinga, i ngā horopaki maha;

- ka āta kite he maha pea ngā pānuitanga e taea ana i roto i tētahi tuhinga;
- ka mahi, ka tautoko hīkarotanga mai i ngā tuhinga, ko ia anake.

### Ngā āhuatanga reo

- Te whakaatu i te mārama whakawāwā ki te wāhi ki ngā āhuatanga reo hei whakaputa pānga i roto, i waenga i ngā tuhinga.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka tautohu i te maha tonu o ngā āhuatanga reo ā-waha, ā-tuhi, ā-ataata ka hōhonu kē ake, ka hōhonu kē ake, ka mārama anō ki te hua o tēnā, o tēnā;
- ka nanao atu i te huhua o ngā kupu hei kapo i te tikanga o te kōrero;

- ka mārama ki te mahi tahi a ngā tikanga tuhi ki te kawē i te whakaaro, ki te whakaputa pānga, ā, ka tātari anō i tēnei āhua;
- ka mārama he rerekē anō ngā reo me te āhua o te tuhi o tēnā, o tēnā kaituhi, ka kite anō i te hua o ēnei rerekētanga.

### Te hanga

- Te whakaatu i te mārama whakawāwā ki te maha tonu o ngā whakatakotoranga.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka tautohu, ka mārama anō ki ngā āhuatanga me ngā tikanga o te maha tonu o ngā whakatakotoranga tuhinga, ka kite anō i te hua o ēnei hei kawē i ngā whakaaro o roto i te tuhinga.





## TE KŌRERO, TE TUHITUHI, TE WHAKAATU

### Ngā tukanga me ngā rautaki

*Ka āhei te ākongā ki:*

- Te kōtuitui i ngā puna mōhiohio, ngā tukanga me ngā rautaki i runga i te whai hua, i te māia me te hāngai pū, hei tautohu, hei hanga, hei whakapuaki i ngā ariā kei te hōhonu kē atu.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka whakamahi i te mārama kukune ki ngā hononga i waenga i te reo ā-waha, ā-tuhi, ā-ataata ina titoa he tuhinga;
- ka tito i te maha tonu o ngā tuhinga kei te kaha kē atu te matahuhua me te uaua, e honohono tahi ana anō ngā whakaaro o roto, mā te kōtuitui i ngā puna mōhiohio me ngā rautaki tukatuka;
- ka kimi i ngā whakahokinga kōrero mai, me te kuhu atu i ngā whakatikatika kia mārama ake ai ngā tuhinga, kia nui ake anō te pānga;
- ka huritao ki āna ake tuhinga: ka aroturuki, ka arotake i tāna ake ahu whakamua, ka whakahua i tāna e ako ana i runga i te māia.

*Mā te whai i ēnei tukanga me ēnei rautaki i āna mahi whakarongo, pānui, mātakitaki, ka āhei te ākongā ki:*

### Ngā whāinga me ngā hunga mā rātou ngā kōrero

- Te whakaatu i te mārama whakawāwā ki te tārai i ngā tuhinga kia hāngai ai ki ngā hunga maha, ki ngā whāinga maha.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka hanga i te maha tonu o ngā tuhinga e whakaatu ana i te mārama ki te whāinga me te hunga mā rātou te tuhinga, me te hua o ēnei mea, mā te āta kōwhiri i ngā kupu, i ngā whakaaro, i te reo, me te hanga e rite ana;
- ka hiki ake, ka kawea roa i te reo whaiaro i ngā wāhi e hāngai ana.

### Ngā ariā

- Te tīpako, te whakahiato, te whakawhiti i ngā ariā kawea roa, mō ngā kaupapa huhua noa.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka whakahiato, ka whakawhiti, ka kawea roa i ngā ariā, ngā mōhiohio, me ngā māramatanga rerewhānui;
- ka waihanga tuhinga kopi kua āta whakamaheretia, e honohono pai ana, mā te tāpiri taipitopito ki ngā ariā, mā te hono haere rānei i ngā ariā, i ngā taipitopito rānei;
- ka whakaatu i te mārama hōhonu ki te maha tonu o ngā aronga, o ngā titiro.

### Ngā āhuatanga reo

- Te tīpako me te kōtuitui haere i te maha tonu o ngā āhuatanga reo kia hāngai tonu, e tutuki ai ngā pānga huhua.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka āta whakamahi i te maha tonu o ngā āhuatanga ā-waha, ā-tuhi, ā-ataata hei kawea i te whakaaro, i te pānga, me te rere noa o te kupu i te waha, e pārekareka ai ngā kōrero ki te hunga mā rātou te tuhinga;
- ka nanao atu i te huhua o ngā kupu hei āta whakapuaki i te whakaaro whāiti;
- ka whakamahi i te maha tonu o ngā tikanga tuhi, tae atu ki te whakatakoto tika i te kōrero me ngā tikanga tātaki, i runga i te hāngai, i te whai hua, me te tika.

### Te hanga

- Te whakariterite tuhinga, me te whakamahi i te huhua o ngā whakatakotoranga e hāngai ana, e honohono ana, e whai hua ana.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka whakariterite, ka whakahiato i ngā ariā me ngā mōhiohio hei whakatinana i tētahi whāinga, i tētahi pānga rānei, me te āta nanao atu i ngā āhuatanga me ngā tikanga o ētahi whakatakotoranga tuhinga huhua.





## TE WHAKARONGO, TE PĀNUI, TE MĀTAKITAKI

### Ngā tukanga me ngā rautaki

*Ka āhei te ākongi ki:*

- Te kōtuitui i ngā puna mōhiohio, ngā tukanga me ngā rautaki i runga i te whai hua, i te māia, me te hāngai pū, hei tautohu, hei hanga, hei whakapuaki i ngā ariā kei te hōhonu kē atu.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka tīpako, ka pānui i ngā tuhinga hei mahi pārekareka noa, hei oranga ngākau whaiaro mōna;
- ka āta kite, ka mārama ki ngā hononga i waenga i te reo ā-waha, te reo ā-tuhi, me te reo ataata, ka kite anō i te hua o ēnei āhuatanga;
- ka kōtuitui i ngā puna mōhiohio me ngā mātauranga kua mau kē i a ia i runga i te whai hua, i te māia, me te hāngai pū, e mārama ai ngā momo tuhinga ka huhua kē ake, ka uaua kē ake;
- ka tīpako, ka whakamahi i ngā rautaki tukatuka, kimi māramatanga e tika ana, i runga i te māia me te āhei ki te whakawāwā;
- ka wānanga arohaehae i ngā tuhinga i runga i te mārama me te māia;
- ka aroturuki, ka arotake i a ia anō, ka whakaahua ā-kupu i te ahu whakamua, me te whakaatu i tāna e ako ana i runga i te māia.

*Mā te whai i ēnei tukanga me ēnei rautaki i āna mahi whakarongo, pānui, mātakitaki, ka āhei te ākongi ki:*

### Ngā whāinga me ngā hunga mā rātou ngā tuhinga

- Te whakaatu i te mārama whakawāwā he mea tārai te tuhinga kia hāngai ki te āhua o te whāinga me te hunga mā rātou taua tuhinga.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka āta kite, ka mārama he mea āta waihanga ngā tuhinga kia rite ki ngā koronga maha, ki ngā āhuatanga maha, ka kite anō i te hua o tēnei āhua;
- ka tautohu i te titiro a tēnā, a tēnā i roto i ngā tuhinga, me te āta kite mā te tuhinga tonu pea e whakatau te tūnga o te kaupānui;
- ka arotake i te whaitake me te whai hua o ētahi tuhinga.

### Ngā ariā

- Te whakaatu i te mārama whakawāwā, i te mārama pū ki ngā ariā o roto, o waenga, ā, kei tua anō i ētahi tuhinga.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka kapo i te tikanga, mā te mārama pū ki ngā ariā ka hōhonu kē ake, ka hōhonu kē ake;
- ka whiri i ngā hononga, mā te tātari, te arotake me te kōtuitui i ngā ariā o roto, o waenga i ngā tuhinga, i ngā horopaki maha;
- ka āta kite he maha pea ngā pānuitanga e taea ana i roto i tētahi tuhinga;
- ka mahi, ka tautoko hīkarotanga mai i ngā tuhinga, ko ia anake.

### Ngā āhuatanga reo

- Te whakaatu i te mārama whakawāwā, i te mārama pū ki te wāhi ki ngā āhuatanga reo hei whakaputa pānga i roto, i waenga i ngā tuhinga.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka tautohu i te maha tonu o ngā āhuatanga reo hōhonu, ā-waha, ā-tuhi, ā-ataata, ka mārama anō ki te hua o tēnā, o tēnā;
- ka nanao atu i te huhua noa o ngā kupu hei kapo i te tikanga o te kōrero;
- ka mārama ki te mahi tahi a ngā tikanga tuhi ki te kawē i te whakaaro, ki te whakaputa pānga, ā, ka tātari, ka arotake anō i tēnei āhua;
- ka mārama he rerekē anō ngā reo me te āhua o te tuhi o tēnā, o tēnā kaituhi, ka kite anō i te hua o ēnei rerekētanga.

### Te hanga

- Te whakaatu i te mārama whakawāwā ki te maha tonu o ngā whakatakotoranga.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka tautohu, ka mārama anō ki ngā āhuatanga me ngā tikanga o te maha tonu o ngā whakatakotoranga tuhinga, ka kite anō i te hua o ēnei hei kawē i ngā whakaaro o roto i te tuhinga.





## TE KŌRERO, TE TUHITUHI, TE WHAKAATU

### Ngā tukanga me ngā rautaki

*Ka āhei te ākongā ki:*

- Te kōtuitui i ngā puna mōhiohio, ngā tukanga me ngā rautaki i runga i te whai hua, i te māia me te hāngai pū, hei tautohu, hei hanga, hei whakapuaki i ngā ariā kei te hōhonu kē atu.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka whakamahi i te mārama kukune ki ngā hononga i waenga i te reo ā-waha, ā-tuhi, ā-ataata ina titoa he tuinga;
- ka tito i te maha tonu o ngā tuinga kei te kaha kē atu te matahuhua me te uaua, e honohono tahi ana anō ngā whakaaro o roto, mā te kōtuitui

- i ngā puna mōhiohio me ngā rautaki tukatuka;
- ka kimi i ngā whakahokinga kōrero mai, me te kuhu atu i ngā whakatikatika kia mārama ake ai ngā tuinga, kia nui ake anō te pānga;
- ka huritao ki āna ake tuinga: ka aroturuki, ka arotake i tāna ake ahu whakamua, ka whakahua i tāna e ako ana i runga i te māia.

*Mā te whai i ēnei tukanga me ēnei rautaki i āna mahi kōrero, tuhituhi, whakaatu, ka āhei te ākongā ki:*

### Ngā whāinga me te hunga mā rātou ngā tuinga

- Te whakaatu i te mārama whakawāwā ki te tārai i ngā tuinga kia hāngai ai ki ngā hunga maha, ki ngā whāinga maha.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka hanga i te maha tonu o ngā tuinga e whakaatu ana i te mārama ki te whāinga me te hunga mā rātou te tuinga, me te hua o

- ēnei mea, mā te āta kōwhiri i ngā kupu, i ngā whakaaro, i te reo, me te hanga e rite ana;
- ka hiki ake, ka kawea roa i te reo whaiaro i ngā wāhi e hāngai ana.

### Ngā ariā

- Te tīpako, te whakahiato, te whakawhiti i ngā ariā kawea roa, ariā hōhonu mō ngā kaupapa huhua noa.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka whakahiato, ka whakawhiti, ka kawea roa i ngā ariā, ngā mōhiohio, me ngā māramatanga hōhonu;
- ka waihanga tuinga kopi kua āta whakamaheretia,

- e honohono pai ana, mā te tāpiri taipitopito ki ngā ariā, mā te hono haere rānei i ngā ariā, i ngā taipitopito rānei;
- ka whakaatu i te kakama, i te mārama hōhonu ki te maha tonu o ngā aronga, o ngā titiro.

### Ngā āhuatanga reo

- Te tīpako, te kōtuitui haere me te kawea roa i te maha tonu o ngā āhuatanga reo kia hāngai tonu, e tutuki ai ngā pānga huhua.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka āta whakamahi mārire i te maha tonu o ngā āhuatanga ā-waha, ā-tuhi, ā-ataata hei kawea i te whakaaro, i te pānga, me te rere noa o te kupu i te waha, te honohono anō o ngā whakaaro, e pārekareka ai ngā kōrero ki te hunga mā rātou te tuinga;

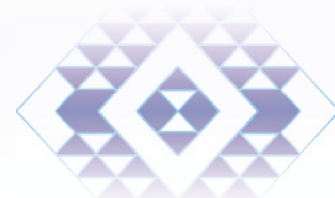
- ka nanao atu i te huhua noa o ngā kupu hei āta whakapuaki i te whakaaro whāiti;
- ka whakamahi i te maha tonu o ngā tikanga tuhi, tae atu ki te whakatakoto tika i te kōrero me ngā tikanga tātaki, i runga i te hāngai, i te whai hua, me te tika.

### Te hanga

- Te whakariterite tuinga, me te whakamahi i te huhua o ngā whakatakotoranga e hāngai ana, e honohono ana, e whai hua ana.

Ngā Tohu:

- ka whakariterite, ka whakahiato i ngā ariā me ngā mōhiohio hei whakatinana i tētahi whāinga, i tētahi pānga rānei, me te āta nanao atu i ngā āhuatanga me ngā tikanga o ētahi whakatakotoranga tuinga huhua.







# Ngā Reo



*Ko tōku reo tōku ohooho, ko tōku reo tōku māpihi maurea,  
Ko tōku reo tōku whakakai marihi.*

## He aha te tino o te ako i ngā reo?

Ko te hono i waenga i te reo me te horopaki pāpori, ahurea e kōrerotia ai ia, he hono e kore e taea te momotu. Ko te whakatauaikī i runga ake nei e whakaū ana i te noho taonga mai o te reo i roto i ngā tikanga ā-iwi. Kua whakaritea te reo ki ngā hanga ātaahua pērā i te whakakai marihi hei whakaatu i te noho kāmehameha o te reo ki te hunga kōrero i taua reo. Inā rā, mā te reo rawa o tētahi iwi e mau ai āna tikanga ā-iwi.

He mahi rangatira te ako i te reo o iwi kē, o whenua kē, he mataaho e karapa ai te titiro ki te āhua, ki ngā tikanga a taua iwi. Me kī, he pōhiri nā taua iwi kia uru koe ki ā rātou tikanga, ki ā rātou ritenga, e āhua rite ana ki tō tātou whakaaro nui ki te manaaki i te tangata. Mā roto i tō tātou mārama ki te whanaungatanga, ina ākona ētahi reo ka torotoroa ō tātou ake whakapapa, ō tātou ake mātauranga, tae atu ki te tuakiri ā-whānau, te tuakiri whaiaro, otirā, me te whai wāhi ki ngā ritenga, ki ngā kōrero tuku iho, ki ngā tikanga me ngā mātauranga ahurea o ētahi atu.

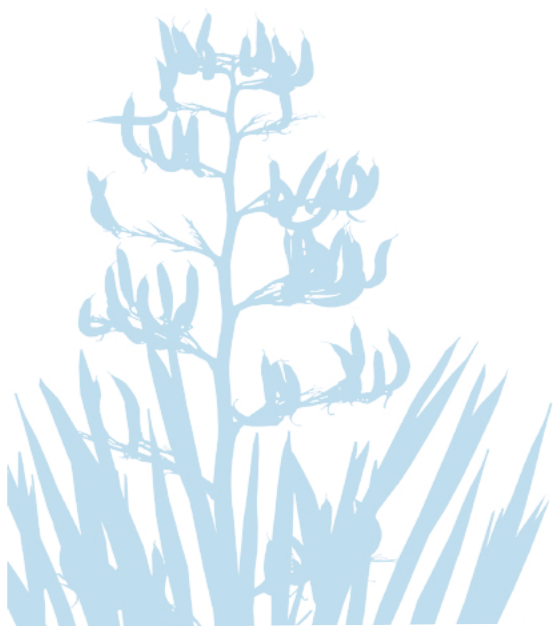
Mā roto i tēnei wāhanga ako, ka takoto he anga mō te whakaako me te ako i ngā reo i tua atu i te reo whakaako. Ko te taumata 1 o te marautanga te wāhi e tīmata ai ngā ākonga karekau ō rātou mōhiotanga ki te reo e ākona ana, ahakoa kei tēhea paparanga o te kura rātou e mahi ana.

## He aha i ako ai i tētahi reo?

Mā te reo e tūhonoa ai ngā tāngata noho tata, me ngā tāngata noho tawhiti anō. Kōrerotia ai te reo i te hapori, i te ao nui tonu, mā te reo anō e āwhina ki te tārai i te ao. He haere kōtui te reo me ngā tikanga, he ara e whāwhā ai te tangata i ngā whakaaro, i ngā whakapono, i ngā tikanga a iwi kē. Ko te reo ā-waha, ā-tuhi, me te reo ataata ērā e hono ana i a tātou ki ngā rā o mua, e para ana anō i te huarahi ki te noho i runga i te kākanomaha, i te reomaha, i ngā rā kei te tū mai.

He tautoko tonu tā te ako i tētahi reo tāpiri i te mārama o te ākonga ki te āhua o te whakamahi reo. Ina whāwhātia e te ākonga he reo kē, ka whānui ake ōna māramatanga reo, ahurea, e pai ake ai tana whakawhiti whakaaro tahi, tana mahi tahi ki ētahi atu. Ina whakawhiti kōrero ki te tangata ki tētahi reo kē, ka kite te ākonga i ētahi ara hou e pai ai tana whakamāori i ngā pātai, me te wāhi ki a ia i te ao nui tonu. Mā konei e rerekē ai te āhua o te mau o ngā mātauranga, ngā pūkenga, me ngā waiaro i te ākonga, koia hei tūāpapa mō tana noho ki tēnei ao e nohoia ana e ngā tāngata maha, e ngā reo maha, e ngā iwi maha.

Ko te ako haere i te reo tētahi mea ka whakakaha i te ākonga kia riro ai i a ia ngā pūkenga, kia tū māia anō ia, me te aha, ka ngākau titikaha ki te whāwhā i ngā ara ako āhua mōrearea. He painga ka puta ki ngā ākonga reorua, reomaha – taha ahurea, taha pāpori, taha hinengaro, taha whakawhitiwhiti. Mā ēnei painga ka mau i ngā ākonga ngā pūkenga me ngā rautaki hinengaro e ākona ai ētahi reo kē atu, me te kaha ake anō o tō rātou mōhio ki ō rātou ake reo, ki ā rātou ake tikanga. Ina ākona he reo tāpiri, kua takoto he ara e werohia ai te ākonga, taha hinengaro nei, ka takoto anō he ara ako hou, he ara kimi mātauranga hou, me te kaha ake o tō rātou mōhio ki a rātou anō.



## He pēhea te anga o tēnei wāhanga ako?

Ko te āhei o te ākongā ki te whakawhiti whakaaro te mea nui o tēnei wāhanga ako, waihoki ko Te Whakawhiti Whakaaro te whenu matua. E rua atu anō ngā whenu tautoko, e whakapakari ana i te mōhio ki te reo me ngā āhuetanga ahurea e tutuki pai ai te whakawhiti whakaaro.

I te whenu Whakawhiti Whakaaro, ka ako ngā ākongā ki te āta whakamahi i te reo hei kawē i te whakaaro. Ina pakari ake te mātauranga reo me te mātauranga ahurea, ka pai ake te whakawhiti whakaaro, ka pakari ake ngā pūkenga pā, arā, te whakarongo, te pānui, te mātakitaki, tae atu ki ngā pūkenga whakaputa, arā, te kōrero, te tuhituhi, te whakaatu me te whakaari.

I te whenu Mātauranga Reo, ka āta tirohia e ngā ākongā te reo, e mōhio ai rātou ki tōna āhua, ā, me pēhea te whakamahi. Ka āta tirohia ngā pānga i waenga i ngā kupu, i ngā whakatakoto, te whakarerekē a te kaikōrero i tana reo hei kawē i te whakaaro i ngā horopaki rerekē, mō ngā kaupapa rerekē, me te rerekē o te takoto o ngā kōrero i tēnā momo tuhi, i tēnā momo tuhi. Mā tēnei whenu e āwhina te ākongā ki te whakapakari i tōna mōhio tauaki ki te reo, e tika ake ai tana whakamahi i te reo i te takanga o te wā.

I te whenu Mātauranga Ahurea, ka āta tirohia e ngā ākongā ngā tikanga ā-iwi me te hononga i waenga i ērā me te reo. I a rātou ka mōhio haere ki ētahi āhuetanga o ngā pūnaha whakapono o ngā kaikōrero o te reo e ākona ana e rātou, ka kaha ake tō rātou tū māia. Ka mārama ake ki te wāhi ki te reo me ngā tikanga ā-iwi hei whakaatu i ēnei pūnaha. I a rātou ka whakataurite, ka whakatauaro i ngā whakapono, i ngā tikanga ā-iwi, tae atu ki ā rātou ake, ka mārama ake ki a rātou anō, ā, ka manawanui ake ki ētahi atu.

Ko ngā mea kia ākona i tēnei wāhanga ako, kei tētahi whakaputanga kōrero whānui mō ngā mea e tika ana kia tutuki i ngā taumata noho takirua. Ka takoto anō ngā whāinga paetae mō te whenu matua me ngā whenu tautoko e rua. Ko ngā whāinga paetae i te whenu Whakawhiti Whakaaro hei tūāpapa mō ngā aromatawai. Ko ngā mahi aromatawai mō ngā whenu tautoko, ko ērā noa iho o roto i te whenu Whakawhiti Whakaaro e hāngai ana.

Kua tuhia ngā whāinga paetae kia hāngai ki ngā reo katoa e whakaakona ana i te kura. Heoi, kei ngā aratohu whāiti mō tēnā reo, mō tēnā reo ētahi atu whakamārama.



## TAUMATA 1 & 2

## TAUMATA 3 & 4

### He Kupu Whakaahua i te Matatau

Ka mārama ngā ākonga ki ngā kōrero e taunga ana rātou me ngā kupu o ia rā, ka taea anō e rātou te whakamahi ēnei hanga. Ka taea e ngā ākonga te whakawhiti whakaaro mā mā nei, i ngā horopaki e tautokona ai rātou. (E whai ana i te *Common European Framework for Languages, Global Scale Level A1: Basic User*; Council of Europe, 2001.)

Ka mārama ngā ākonga ki ngā tuinga mā mā, ka taea anō e rātou te waihanga tuinga mā mā, me te whakamahi i tō rātou mōhio ki te reo e ākona ana. Ka taea e ngā ākonga te whakaahua ā-kupu ētahi āhuatanga e pā ana ki a rātou, ki ō rātou whānau, me te taiao tata e karapoti ana i a rātou. (E whai ana i te *Common European Framework for Languages, Global Scale Level A2: Basic User*; Council of Europe, 2001.)

### Te Whakawhiti Whakaaro

I ngā horopaki reo, ahurea-pāpori kua tīpakohia, koinei ngā mahi ka oti i te ākonga:

I runga i te tīpako me te whakamahi i te reo, i ngā tohu, i ngā tānga hei whakawhiti whakaaro

- te kapo me te waihanga mōhiohio;

I runga i te whakataki i a ia, me te whakapā atu ki ētahi atu

- te hanga me te whakautu i ngā pātai me ngā tono;

I runga i te uru atu me te whai wāhi atu ki ngā hapori

- te whakaatu i te mārama ki ngā āhuatanga pāpori i roto i ana mahi tahi, kōrero tahi ki ētahi atu.

I ngā horopaki reo, ahurea-pāpori kua tīpakohia, koinei ngā mahi ka oti i te ākonga:

I runga i te tīpako me te whakamahi i te reo, i ngā tohu, i ngā tānga hei whakawhiti whakaaro

- te mārama ki me te hanga i ngā mōhiohio me ngā ariā;

I runga i te whakataki i a ia, me te whakapā atu ki ētahi atu

- te whakapuaki i me te urupare ki ngā hiahia me ngā whāinga whaiaro;

I runga i te uru atu me te whai wāhi atu ki ngā hapori

- te whakamahi i ngā mātauranga ahurea kia tōtika ai te āhua o te whakawhiti whakaaro.

### Te Mātauranga Reo

Ka taea e te ākonga:

- te kite kei te reo e ākona ana e ia ōna anō whakatakoto, ōna anō āhuatanga pūnahanaha;
- te kite ngā hononga ki t/ōna ake reo.

Ka taea e te ākonga:

- te kite me te whakaahua ā-kupu i ngā whakatakoto, i ngā āhuatanga pūnahanaha o te reo e ākona ana;
- te whakataurite me te whakataurite i ngā reo.

### Te Mātauranga Ahurea

Ka taea e te ākonga:

- te kite kei te/ngā ahurea e ākona ana ōna anō whakatakoto, ōna anō āhuatanga pūnahanaha;
- te kite ngā hononga ki t/ōna ake reo.

Ka taea e te ākonga:

- te kite me te whakaahua ā-kupu i ngā whakatakoto, i ngā āhuatanga pūnahanaha o te ahurea e ākona ana;
- te whakataurite me te whakataurite i ngā tikanga ā-iwi.



## TAUMATA 5 & 6

## TAUMATA 7 & 8

### He Kupu Whakaahua i te Matatau

Ka mārama ngā ākonga ki te reo āhua uaua ake, ka taea anō e rātou te whakamahi taua reo. Ka taea e rātou te whakawhiti whakaaro mō ngā mea i tua atu i te horopaki e tino pātata ana, hei tauira, mō ngā āhuratanga i ngā rā o mua, i ngā rā kei te tū mai. Ka mārama ngā ākonga ki ngā momo tuhinga maha, ka taea anō e rātou te waihanga aua momo tuhinga. [E whai ana i te *Common European Framework for Languages, Global Scale Level A2: Strong Waystage Performance*; Council of Europe, 2001.]

Ka taea e te ākonga te tārai ngā momo kōrero huhua kia whaihua tonu, hei whakapuaki i ōna ake ariā, i ōna ake whakaaro, hei tautoko, hei wero i ō ētahi atu. Ka taea anō e ia te whakamahi me te tautohu ngā āhuratanga taha reo, taha ahurea e ārahi ana i te whakamāoritanga, e āhei ai ia ki te urupare arohaehae ki ngā tuhinga. [E whai ana i te *Common European Framework for Languages, Global Scale Level B1: Independent User*; Council of Europe, 2001.]

### Te Whakawhiti Whakaaro

I ngā horopaki reo, ahurea-pāpori kua tīpakohia, koinei ngā mahi ka oti i te ākonga:

**I runga i te tīpako me te whakamahi i te reo, i ngā tohu, i ngā tānga hei whakawhiti whakaaro**

- te whakawhiti mōhiohio, ariā, whakaaro mā roto i ngā momo tuhinga maha;

**I runga i te whakataki i a ia, me te whakapā atu ki ētahi atu**

- te whakapuaki i me urupare ki ngā ariā me ngā whakaaro whaiaro;

**I runga i te uru atu me te whai wāhi atu ki ngā hapori**

- te whakawhiti whakaaro i runga i te tōtika i ngā horopaki maha.

I ngā horopaki reo, ahurea-pāpori kua tīpakohia, koinei ngā mahi ka oti i te ākonga:

**I runga i te tīpako me te whakamahi i te reo, i ngā tohu, i ngā tānga hei whakawhiti whakaaro**

- te whakawhiti i ngā mōhiohio, i ngā ariā me ngā whakaaro mā roto i ngā momo tuhinga huhua ka uaua kē atu, ka uaua kē atu;

**I runga i te whakataki i a ia, me te whakapā atu ki ētahi atu**

- te toro i ngā whakaaro o ētahi atu, tae atu ki te hanga me te whakawhitiwhiti i ngā titiro whaiaro;

**I runga i te uru atu me te whai wāhi atu ki ngā hapori**

- te uru ki ngā kōrerorero auroa, me te tuhi i ngā tuhinga auroa.

### Te Mātauranga Reo

Ka taea e te ākonga:

- te kite ngā whakatakoto maha o te reo e ākona ana, e tutuki ai tēnā kaupapa, tēnā kaupapa.

Ka taea e te ākonga:

- te tātari ngā whakatakoto o te reo e ākona ana i ngā tuhinga maha, mō ngā kaupapa maha;
- te toro i te whakaaturanga o te tikanga o te kupu, puta noa i ngā reo maha.

### Te Mātauranga Ahurea

Ka taea e te ākonga:

- te kite ngā whakatakoto maha o te/ngā ahurea e ākona ana, e tutuki ai tēnā kaupapa, tēnā kaupapa.

Ka taea e te ākonga:

- te tātari ngā whakatakoto o te/ngā ahurea e ākona ana, mō ngā kaupapa maha, mā ngā hunga maha;
- te tātari i te wāhi ki te reo e ākona ana hei whakaatu i ngā tikanga ā-iwi.





# He Kupu Taka

Ngā Kupu Tukanga  
Ngā Kupu i ngā Wāhanga Ako

# NGĀ KUPU TUKANGA

āhukahuka	<i>recognise</i>	wehewehe	<i>sort</i>
ariā	<i>theory; idea</i>	whaitake	<i>meaningful; purpose; relevance</i>
aroaehae	<i>critique; appraisal</i>	whakaahua	<i>describe</i>
arotahi	<i>focus</i>	whai wāhi atu	<i>experience; participate in</i>
arotake	<i>evaluate</i>	whakaaro aroaehae	<i>critical thinking</i>
āta titiro	<i>observe</i>	whakaaro arorau	<i>logical thinking</i>
auaha	<i>creative</i>	whakaaroaro	<i>consider</i>
huatau	<i>concept</i>	whakaaronui (-tia)	<i>appreciative</i>
ia	<i>trend</i>	whakaata	<i>reflect</i>
kōwhiri	<i>choose; select</i>	whakaatu	<i>show; demonstrate</i>
mārama	<i>understand</i>	whakaauaha	<i>creative</i>
matapae	<i>predict</i>	whakaawe[nga]	<i>influence; affect</i>
matapaki	<i>discuss</i>	whakawhānui	<i>generalise</i>
mātātaki	<i>challenge</i>	whakahāngai	<i>adapt; apply</i>
matea	<i>need</i>	whakahiato	<i>compile; synthesize; develop</i>
mōhio	<i>know; informed</i>	whakahua	<i>pronounce</i>
mōhiohio	<i>information; informed</i>	whakamāori	<i>interpret</i>
pāhekoheko	<i>interact</i>	whakamārama	<i>explain</i>
parahau	<i>justify</i>	whakamātau	<i>experiment; test</i>
pārongo	<i>information</i>	whakangāwari	<i>simplify</i>
rāwekeweke	<i>manipulate</i>	whakapakepake	<i>persuade</i>
tāruarua	<i>retell; repeat</i>	whakarāpopoto	<i>summarise</i>
tātai	<i>calculate</i>	whakarerekē	<i>modify; change</i>
tātaki	<i>spell</i>	whakarite	<i>plan</i>
tātari	<i>analyse; sort</i>	whakarōpū	<i>classify</i>
tauirā	<i>pattern; model</i>	whakatairanga	<i>promote</i>
tautohu	<i>identify</i>	whakatairite	<i>compare &amp; contrast</i>
tautuhi	<i>define</i>	whakataki	<i>manage</i>
tīpako	<i>sample; select</i>	whakatau mutunga	<i>conclusion</i>
tohatoha	<i>distribute; allocate; share</i>	whakataurite	<i>compare; contrast</i>
torotoro	<i>explore; exploration</i>	whakatauirā	<i>to model; give examples</i>
tūhono	<i>make connections</i>	whakawhanake	<i>develop</i>
tūhura	<i>investigate</i>	whanaketanga	<i>development</i>
tukanga	<i>process</i>		
waihanga	<i>create; shape</i>		

# NGĀ KUPU I NGĀ WĀHANGA AKO

āheinga koiri	<i>physical competence</i>	ā-tinana (reo o te tinana)	<i>paralinguistics; body language</i>
āheinga reo	<i>language function</i>	auaha	<i>creative; innovative</i>
aho	<i>light</i>	auahatanga	<i>creativity</i>
ahu-2	<i>2-dimensional</i>	auau te puta	<i>high frequency</i>
ahu-3	<i>3-dimensional</i>	aukati	<i>constraint</i>
āhua-matū	<i>state of matter</i>	aupēhi	<i>peer pressure</i>
āhuatanga ahurea	<i>cultural feature</i>	autō	<i>magnet(ism)</i>
āhuatanga pūmau	<i>invariant property</i>	autōhiko	<i>electromagnet(ism)</i>
āhuatanga toi	<i>art technique</i>	ā-waha (reo ā-waha)	<i>oral language</i>
āhuatanga tūturu	<i>natural feature</i>	e whai tikanga ana ki ...	<i>having significance for ...</i>
ahupūngao karihi	<i>nuclear physics</i>	hā (o te oro)	<i>tone (of sound)</i>
ahurea	<i>culture</i>	haepapa	<i>responsible; responsibility</i>
ahurei	<i>unique</i>	haere kōtui	<i>interrelated</i>
āinga	<i>force (e.g. historical)</i>	hakoko	<i>refract(ion)</i>
āinga pāpori	<i>social force</i>	hangarau kai	<i>food technology</i>
akoranga koiri	<i>physical education</i>	hangarau koiora	<i>biotechnology</i>
ānga	<i>momentum</i>	hangarau whakatina	<i>control technology</i>
ā-nuku	<i>geological</i>	hangore	<i>flexible</i>
ao māori	<i>natural environment</i>	hapa	<i>mistake; a slip</i>
ao tukupū	<i>universe</i>	haporī	<i>community</i>
aorangi	<i>planet</i>	hātepe	<i>process</i>
āputa	<i>gap; space between</i>	haumarū(tanga)	<i>safe; safety</i>
ara iahiko	<i>electrical circuit</i>	hauropi	<i>ecology, ecological</i>
ārai	<i>insulate</i>	hau-tahi	<i>unit fraction</i>
āraitanga	<i>eclipse</i>	hihiri	<i>enthusiasm</i>
ā-rangi	<i>astronomical</i>	hīkaro	<i>infer; inference</i>
ariā korakora	<i>particle theory</i>	hiko	<i>electricity</i>
ariā nukupapa	<i>tectonic plate theory</i>	hiko tū	<i>static electricity</i>
aro whānui	<i>standard (e.g. unit of measurement)</i>	hinengaro auaha	<i>ingenuity</i>
aronga kē	<i>non-standard (e.g. unit of measurement)</i>	hinonga	<i>enterprise</i>
arotautanga	<i>optimisation</i>	hiranga	<i>excellence; superior</i>
aruarunga	<i>discontinuity</i>	hītori	<i>history</i>
ā-tā (reo tā)	<i>language in a visual form</i>	hoahoa	<i>design</i>
ātārangi	<i>shadow</i>	hoahoa rākau	<i>tree diagram</i>
ā-Tāwhiri	<i>atmospheric</i>		

honohono katote	<i>ionic bonding</i>
honohono ngātahi	<i>covalent bonding</i>
hononga	<i>relationship</i>
hononga mokowā	<i>spatial relationship</i>
horopaki	<i>context</i>
huānga	<i>element (member of a set); element (arts)</i>
huanui	<i>locus</i>
huapai	<i>positive (outcome)</i>
huarahi wātea	<i>opportunity</i>
huinga raraunga	<i>data set</i>
hurihanga	<i>cycle</i>
hurihanga-ora	<i>life-cycle</i>
huringa o te wā	<i>over time</i>
ikarangi	<i>galaxy</i>
ine hononga taurangi rārangi	<i>linear regression</i>
ine mahora	<i>standard deviation</i>
iranga	<i>genetics</i>
kaiārahi	<i>leader</i>
kaitoi	<i>artist</i>
kaiwhakanao	<i>producer</i>
kaiwhakapeto	<i>consumer</i>
kaka-aku	<i>textile</i>
kakano	<i>texture</i>
kano	<i>colour</i>
kanorau koiora	<i>biodiversity</i>
kare ā-roto	<i>feeling; emotion</i>
katote	<i>ion</i>
kaupapa koiri	<i>physical activity programme</i>
kauwhiti	<i>lever</i>
kawe	<i>conduct</i>
kawekawe	<i>chemical</i>
kīanga	<i>phrase</i>
kīanga taurangi	<i>algebraic expression</i>
kiato	<i>density</i>
kīrehe	<i>animal</i>
kirihou	<i>plastic</i>
kiritaki	<i>customer, client</i>

kitenga	<i>finding</i>
kōhauhau	<i>atmosphere</i>
kōhungahunga	<i>infant; toddler</i>
koiora	<i>biology; biotechnology</i>
konganuku	<i>metal</i>
kōrahi	<i>scale</i>
korakora	<i>particle (chemical)</i>
korehāhā	<i>extinct</i>
kōrero whakanene	<i>joke</i>
kōtui	<i>combine</i>
kōtuitui	<i>integrate; synthesise</i>
kounga	<i>quality</i>
kounga (kupu āhua)	<i>qualitative</i>
kōwae	<i>paragraph</i>
kōwhiringa	<i>option; choice</i>
kukuwhatanga, kunenga	<i>evolution</i>
kupu āhua	<i>adjective</i>
kupu honohono	<i>conjunction</i>
kupu taurite	<i>synonym</i>
mahi koiri	<i>physical activity</i>
mahinga ahurea	<i>cultural practice</i>
mahinga ohaoha	<i>economic activity</i>
māia	<i>confidence</i>
maioha	<i>appreciation</i>
mānu	<i>float</i>
mānukanuka	<i>tension</i>
māori	<i>natural</i>
māramatanga	<i>understanding</i>
marohi rāroto	<i>interpolation</i>
marohi rāwaho	<i>extrapolation</i>
mātakinga	<i>observation</i>
mātanga	<i>clear</i>
mātāoroko	<i>object (before transformation)</i>
mātāpono	<i>principle</i>
mātāpuna	<i>source</i>
matatau	<i>proficient</i>
matatika	<i>ethics; ethical</i>

mātātika	<i>ethics</i>
matatika pāpori	<i>social justice</i>
mātātuhi	<i>image (of an object following transformation)</i>
mātau	<i>know; understand</i>
matawaenga	<i>dilemma</i>
matawhawhati	<i>unexpected</i>
matawhenua	<i>geography</i>
matea kikokiko	<i>physical need</i>
matea ngākau	<i>emotional need</i>
matea pāpori	<i>social need</i>
matū	<i>matter; materials</i>
matū waihanga	<i>synthetic</i>
mauroanga	<i>durable</i>
māwhaiwhai kame	<i>food web</i>
mehamehanga	<i>solubility</i>
mōhiotanga	<i>knowledge</i>
mokowā	<i>space; spatial</i>
momo	<i>species</i>
momo tākaro	<i>games</i>
mōmōhanga	<i>scarce</i>
mōrearea	<i>crisis</i>
moroiti	<i>micro-organism</i>
motika	<i>rights</i>
motika tangata	<i>human right</i>
motumotu	<i>disjointed</i>
motunga koeko	<i>conic section</i>
nanao	<i>use</i>
nekehanga	<i>movement</i>
nekenga	<i>motion</i>
ngā mahi a te rēhia	<i>performance arts; performing arts</i>
ngā take o te wā	<i>current events</i>
ngā tikanga o te wā	<i>trends over time</i>
ngaru	<i>wave</i>
ngota	<i>atom</i>
ngotangota	<i>particle (subatomic)</i>
ōhanga	<i>economics; economy</i>
ohaoha	<i>economics</i>

ōkawa	<i>formal</i>
ōkiko	<i>physical (i.e. non-chemical)</i>
ōpaki	<i>informal</i>
ōpunga	<i>heat capacity</i>
oranga	<i>life</i>
oreore	<i>alive</i>
oro	<i>sound</i>
orotahi	<i>note (of sound)</i>
otinga	<i>outcome; effect</i>
ōwehenga pākoki	<i>trigonometric ratio</i>
pae hapa	<i>margins of error</i>
paemahana	<i>temperature</i>
pāhekohekotanga	<i>interaction; cooperation; cultural interaction</i>
pakihi	<i>business</i>
pakirehua	<i>inquiry</i>
pakirehua pāpori	<i>social inquiry</i>
paku whakarerekē	<i>adapt</i>
pana	<i>push</i>
pānga	<i>effect; relationship</i>
pānga huri kōaro	<i>reciprocal function</i>
pānga kōaro	<i>inverse function</i>
pānga pākoki	<i>trigonometric function</i>
pānga pūrua	<i>quadratic function</i>
pānga rārangi	<i>linear relationship</i>
pānga rārangi hāngai	<i>direct linear relationship</i>
pānga rārangi kōaro	<i>inverse linear relationship</i>
pānga rārangi-kore	<i>non-linear function</i>
pānga rōnaki	<i>gradient function</i>
pānga taupū	<i>exponential function</i>
panoni	<i>transformation; change</i>
panoni pūmau	<i>permanent change</i>
panoni rangitahi	<i>temporary change</i>
pāpā	<i>influence; have an impact upon</i>
papa taunga	<i>coordinate plain</i>
pāpāhua	<i>base (vs. acid)</i>

papa-maha	<i>multi-level</i>
papanga	<i>materials</i>
paparua	<i>repeat; copy; replicate</i>
papa-tahi	<i>single-level</i>
papātanga	<i>impact</i>
pāpātanga	<i>rate</i>
pāpātanga o te whiti	<i>rate of change</i>
pāpātanga whakaputu	<i>compound rate</i>
papataunaki	<i>evidence-based</i>
pāpono paheko	<i>combined event</i>
pāpono wehe kē	<i>independent event</i>
pāpono whakawhirinaki	<i>conditional event</i>
pāpori	<i>social; socio-</i>
pārōnaki	<i>differentiation</i>
pārōnaki kōaro	<i>anti-differentiation</i>
pārongo tauanga	<i>statistical information</i>
paturopi	<i>antibiotics</i>
pāwhaitua	<i>integration</i>
peha	<i>narrative</i>
pītau-ira	<i>DNA</i>
pohewatanga	<i>imagination</i>
pōkākā	<i>heat</i>
pūāhua	<i>situation</i>
pūhanga manawa	<i>mechanical</i>
pūhui	<i>compound</i>
pūhui konganuku	<i>metal compound</i>
pūhuru hutanga	<i>puberty</i>
puia	<i>volcano</i>
pūkenga	<i>skill</i>
pūkenga koiri	<i>motor skill</i>
pūkenga koiri whāiti	<i>fine motor skill</i>
pūkenga neke	<i>movement skills</i>
pūkenga puoro	<i>musicianship</i>
pūkenga whakahaere mahi	<i>project management skills</i>
pūmanawa	<i>natural talent; potential</i>
pūmau o te pūngao	<i>conservation of energy</i>
pūmotu	<i>element</i>
puna ira	<i>gene pool</i>

puna reo	<i>language knowledge</i>
pūnaha	<i>system</i>
pūnaha mātauranga	<i>knowledge system</i>
pūnaha ngahuru	<i>metric system</i>
pūnaha tohu	<i>symbol system</i>
pūnaha-hauropi	<i>ecosystem</i>
pūngao	<i>energy</i>
pūngao moe	<i>potential energy</i>
pūngao neke	<i>kinetic energy</i>
puoro	<i>music; sound</i>
pūrau	<i>polynomial</i>
pūrongo	<i>report</i>
pūtahitanga	<i>institution</i>
pūtake	<i>purpose</i>
pūtaketanga	<i>cause</i>
putanga, putanga iho	<i>outcome</i>
rahinga	<i>quantity</i>
rāngai	<i>sector</i>
ranu(nga)	<i>mix(ture)</i>
rapirapi	<i>scribble; scratch</i>
rāpoi ngota	<i>molecule</i>
rārangi pūtahi	<i>intersecting lines</i>
rārangi whakarara	<i>parallel lines</i>
raraunga houanga	<i>time series data</i>
raraunga matarua	<i>bi-variate data</i>
raraunga motumotu	<i>discrete data</i>
raraunga whakarōpū	<i>category data</i>
raraunga whakarōpū matatini	<i>multi-variate category data</i>
ratonga	<i>service</i>
rauara	<i>network</i>
raumata	<i>net (of a solid shape)</i>
raupapa kame	<i>food chain</i>
raupapa koiri	<i>motor skill sequence</i>
raupapa koiri āhua uaua	<i>complex motor skill sequence</i>
raupapa neke	<i>movement sequence</i>
raupapa tatauranga	<i>counting sequence</i>

rauropi	<i>organism; living organism</i>	takenga	<i>origin</i>
rautaki	<i>strategy</i>	takirua raupapa	<i>ordered pair</i>
rautaki āhuahanga	<i>geometrical strategy</i>	takitahi	<i>individual</i>
rautaki pānga riterite	<i>proportional strategy</i>	tāpaetanga kōrero	<i>assertion</i>
rautaki tāpiripiri	<i>additive strategy</i>	tapeke raupapa tāpiri	<i>arithmetic series</i>
rautaki tatau	<i>counting strategy</i>	tapeke raupapa whakarea	<i>geometric series</i>
rautaki taurangi	<i>algebraic strategy</i>	tapepe	<i>falter</i>
rautaki tohatoha ōrite	<i>equal sharing strategy</i>	tāpua	<i>significant</i>
rautaki wāwāhi tau tāpiripiri	<i>additive partitioning strategy</i>	tāpui wai	<i>water reserve</i>
rautaki whakarea	<i>multiplicative strategy</i>	taputapu	<i>tool; instrument</i>
rautaki whakarōpū	<i>grouping strategy</i>	tātaki	<i>spell</i>
rawa	<i>natural resources; resource; materials</i>	tātaritanga raraunga torotoro	<i>exploratory data analysis</i>
rawa ora	<i>living material</i>	tatau (kupu āhua)	<i>quantitative</i>
reo ā-puta	<i>productive language</i>	tau hiato	<i>complex number</i>
reo ā-tinana	<i>body language</i>	tau toitū	<i>prime number</i>
rere	<i>flight</i>	tau tōpū	<i>integer</i>
rerehua	<i>aesthetics</i>	tauhohe matū	<i>chemical reaction</i>
rerekētanga ā-ira	<i>genetic variation</i>	tau hono o te tekau	<i>additive groupings within ten</i>
rima me ngā tauhono	<i>groupings with five</i>	tauira ahurea	<i>cultural pattern</i>
ritenga	<i>rule</i>	tauira horahora hauropi	<i>ecological distribution pattern</i>
rōnaki	<i>gradient; slope</i>	tauira mokowā	<i>spatial pattern</i>
rongo	<i>odour</i>	tauira raupapa	<i>sequential pattern</i>
rū whenua	<i>earthquake</i>	tauira tāruarua	<i>repeating pattern</i>
tāhiko	<i>electronics</i>	tauira taupū kōaro	<i>log modelling</i>
tāhiko me te hangarau whakatina	<i>electronics and control technology</i>	tauira tūturu	<i>natural pattern</i>
tahu	<i>burn</i>	taukumekume	<i>debate</i>
taiao ahurea	<i>cultural environment</i>	taunaki (-tanga)	<i>evidence</i>
taiao tūturu	<i>natural environment</i>	taupatupatu	<i>debate</i>
taiohi	<i>teenager</i>	taupori	<i>population</i>
taiopenga	<i>festival</i>	taupū	<i>exponent</i>
tairongo	<i>sensory</i>	taupuhpuhi	<i>interdependent</i>
Taka Pūmotu	<i>Periodic Table</i>	taurangi	<i>variable; algebra</i>
takahuri	<i>amend; alter; change</i>	taurangi motumotu matapōkere	<i>discrete random variable</i>
takapau	<i>ceremonial mat</i>	taurangitanga	<i>variation</i>
take ohaoha	<i>economic issue</i>	taurea	<i>multiple</i>
take taiao	<i>environmental issue</i>		

taurite	<i>equilibrium</i>
tauru	<i>pulley</i>
tautake	<i>philosophy</i>
tautohe(tia)	<i>contested</i>
tautohetohe	<i>argue a point</i>
tauwehe	<i>factor</i>
tauwhāiti	<i>specific</i>
tawhā	<i>parameter</i>
tāwhai	<i>imitate</i>
te takanga o te wā	<i>over time</i>
tekau me ngā tauhono	<i>groupings with ten</i>
tepe (o te tika)	<i>limit (of accuracy)</i>
tikanga āhuahanga taunga	<i>co-ordinate geometry</i>
tikanga haumaruru	<i>safety procedures</i>
tikanga peha	<i>narrative conventions</i>
tikanga rorohiko mō te kauwhata rārangi	<i>linear programming technique</i>
tikanga tuku iho	<i>tradition</i>
tikanga whakanoho rārangi kōpiko	<i>curve fitting technique</i>
tinihanga	<i>joking around; teasing</i>
tino pakeke	<i>complex</i>
tīpako matapōkere	<i>random sample</i>
tipu	<i>plant</i>
tiri	<i>share</i>
tirohanga	<i>perspective</i>
tito	<i>write; compose</i>
tītohunga ā-rongo	<i>physical phenomenon</i>
titonga puoro	<i>instrumental composition</i>
tō	<i>pull</i>
tō ā-papa	<i>gravity</i>
tohu	<i>symbol</i>
tohu ōkawa	<i>formal notation (music)</i>
tohu tuhituhi	<i>punctuation</i>
toi ataata	<i>visual arts</i>
toitū	<i>lasting; sustainable</i>
tōkeke pāpori	<i>social justice</i>
tokonga whakaaro	<i>thinking (of a group)</i>

tōpana	<i>force</i>
tōrangapū	<i>political; politics</i>
tōrite rārangi	<i>linear inequation</i>
toro ātea	<i>space exploration</i>
totoro	<i>stretch; extend</i>
tūāhua	<i>event</i>
tūāhua o mua	<i>past event</i>
tūāhua whakahirahira	<i>important event</i>
tuakiri	<i>identity</i>
tuakiri ā-iwi	<i>ethnic identity</i>
tuakiri ā-motu, tuakiri ā-whenua	<i>national identity</i>
tuakiri whaiaro	<i>personal identity</i>
tuanaki	<i>calculus</i>
tūāpapa	<i>foundation; basis</i>
tuari hangarite	<i>normal distribution</i>
tuari huarua	<i>binomial distribution</i>
tuari raraunga	<i>data distribution</i>
tuari tātai	<i>theoretical distribution</i>
tuari whakamātau	<i>experimental distribution</i>
tuhi	<i>record</i>
tuhinga ataata	<i>visual language</i>
tūhuratanga tauanga	<i>statistical investigation</i>
tukanga kohikohi raraunga	<i>data collection method</i>
tukanga pāhekoheko	<i>interacting process</i>
tukanga whai tīpako	<i>sampling method</i>
tukatuka mōhiohio	<i>process information</i>
tuku ihotanga	<i>heritage</i>
tuku mōhiohio	<i>information transfer</i>
tukunga iho	<i>inheritance</i>
tukutuku	<i>grid</i>
tūranga	<i>role</i>
ture aho	<i>sine rule</i>
ture whenu	<i>cosine rule</i>
tūtohi ararua	<i>two-way table</i>
uara	<i>value</i>
uara ā-hinengaro	<i>cognitive values</i>
uara ā-wairua	<i>moral values</i>

ūngerī	<i>rhythm</i>
urupare	<i>feedback; response; respond</i>
urutapu	<i>pure</i>
urutau	<i>adapt</i>
utauta	<i>equipment</i>
wahangū	<i>silent</i>
wāhi noho	<i>habitat</i>
waia haere	<i>become more familiar with</i>
waiaro	<i>attitude</i>
waihanga	<i>shape; devise; create</i>
waikawa	<i>acid</i>
waikura	<i>rust</i>
waiwaro	<i>hydrocarbon</i>
waku	<i>friction</i>
warokore	<i>inorganic (chemical)</i>
wāwāhi	<i>partition</i>
wēanga	<i>measure of central tendency</i>
wehe kētanga	<i>independence</i>
wehewehe raraunga	<i>sort data</i>
wetewete	<i>analyse</i>
whaikiko	<i>purposeful</i>
whai patanga	<i>purposeful; useful</i>
whai tūranga	<i>acquire role</i>
whai wāhi (ki) ...	<i>participate; have opportunity</i>
whaiaro	<i>personal</i>
whaihanga	<i>simulation</i>
whaitakenga	<i>reasonableness</i>
whaitua taupono	<i>confidence interval</i>
whaiwāhitanga	<i>opportunity</i>
whaiwaro	<i>organic (chemical)</i>
whakaahua	<i>describe</i>
whakaahuahanga	<i>representation</i>
whakaari	<i>drama</i>
whakaari raraunga	<i>data display</i>
whakaaro pānga riterite	<i>proportional reasoning</i>
whakaaro whaitake	<i>deductive thinking</i>

whakaaroaro	<i>consider</i>
whakaata, whakaataata	<i>reflect</i>
whakaauaha	<i>create; creative</i>
whakaawhiwhi	<i>round (a number)</i>
whakaharatau hangarau	<i>technological practice</i>
whakahiato	<i>collate; develop; synthesize</i>
whakahihiri	<i>motivate</i>
whakahou	<i>reform</i>
whakaihi	<i>excite</i>
whakakoi	<i>sharpen; improve</i>
whakamahi	<i>use; apply</i>
whakamāoritanga	<i>interpretation</i>
whakamātau tika	<i>fair test</i>
whakaniko[niko]	<i>embellish; enhance</i>
whakaoti rapanga	<i>problem-solving</i>
whakapono	<i>belief</i>
whakapono tōrangapū	<i>political ideology</i>
whakaputa tuakiri	<i>expressing identity</i>
whakaputa uri	<i>reproduction</i>
whakatakoto	<i>outline; propose</i>
whakatangitangi	<i>musical instrument</i>
whakataurite	<i>compare; contrast</i>
whakatinana	<i>implement</i>
whakatinana ira	<i>gene expression</i>
whakatoihara	<i>discrimination; prejudice</i>
whakatōtika	<i>intervene (correct)</i>
whakatutuki (matea tangata)	<i>meet (peoples' needs)</i>
whakauru	<i>engage; insert; include</i>
whakawā	<i>make a judgement or decision</i>
whakawhena	<i>assert; be assertive</i>
whakawhiwhinga	<i>acquisition</i>
whānau a Tama-nui-te-Rā	<i>solar system</i>
whanonga	<i>behaviour</i>
whanonga tangata	<i>human behaviour</i>
whāomoomotanga	<i>sustainability</i>
whārite pārōnaki	<i>differential equation</i>

whārite pūrau	<i>polynomial equation</i>
whārite pūrua	<i>quadratic equation</i>
whārite rārangi	<i>linear equation</i>
whārite rārangi-kore	<i>non-linear equation</i>
whārite taupū	<i>exponential equation</i>
whārite tukutahi	<i>simultaneous equation</i>
whārite whai taurangi	<i>algebraic equation</i>
wheako	<i>experience</i>
wheako reo	<i>language experience</i>
whenua, motu	<i>country; nation</i>
whiringa māori	<i>natural selection</i>
whiriwhiringa raupapa	<i>permutation</i>
whiriwhiringa raupapa-kore	<i>combination</i>

Te Kāwanatanga o Aotearoa

ISBN 978-0-7903-4310-5



9 780790 343105